Bio-geography



DEPARTMENT OF GEOGRAPHY AND NATURAL RESOURCE MANAGEMENT

SCHOOL OF EARTH AND ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE UTTARAKHAND OPEN UNIVERSITY

(Teenpani Bypass, Behind Transport Nagar, Haldwani 263139 (Nainital), Uttarakhand, India)

Course Code- GEOG - 602

Bio-geography



DEPARTMENTOFGEOGRAPHY AND NATURAL RESOURCE MANAGEMENT SCHOOL OF EARTH AND ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCE UTTARAKHAND OPEN UNIVERSITY

PhoneNo.05946-261122,261123 TollfreeNo.18001804025

FaxNo.05946-264232, E.mailinfo@uou.ac.in

Website: <u>https://uou.ac.in</u>

Board of Studies

Chairman

Vice-Chancellor Uttarakhand Open University, Haldwani

Professor R. K. Pandey (Retd.) Head & Dean, Department of Geography DSB Campus, Nainital

Dr. Ranju Joshi Pandey Department of Geography & NRM School of Earth and Environmental Science Uttarakhand Open University, Haldwani

Mr. Sudhanshu Verma Department of Geography & NRM School of Earth and Environmental Science Uttarakhand Open University, Haldwani

Mr. Sunil Tiwari Department of RS &GIS School of Earth and Environmental Science Uttarakhand Open University, Haldwani

Convener

Professor- P.D.Pant School of Earth and Environmental Science Uttarakhand Open University, Haldwani

Professor Subhakanta Mohapatra Head, Department of Geography IGNOU, New Delhi

Dr. Pradeep Kumar Pant Department of Geography & NRM School of Earth and Environmental Science Uttarakhand Open University, Haldwani

Dr. Mohan Singh Sammal Department of Geography & NRM School of Earth and Environmental Science Uttarakhand Open University, Haldwani

Programme Coordinator

Dr. Ranju Joshi Pandey Department of Geography & NRM School of Earth and Environmental Science Uttarakhand Open University, Haldwani

Sl. No.	Units Written By	Unit No.
1	Dr. Pradeep Kumar Pant Assistant Professor Department of Geography and Natural Resource Management School of Earth and Environmental Science Uttarakhand Open University, Haldwani, Nainital	1 & 2
2	Mr. Sunil Tiwari Assistant Professor Department of RS & GIS School of Earth and Environmental Science Uttarakhand Open University, Haldwani, Nainital	3,4,5,6, & 11
3	Mr. Sudhanshu Kumar Varma Assistant Professor Department of Geography and Natural Resource Management School of Earth and Environmental Science Uttarakhand Open University, Haldwani, Nainital	7, 8, 9 & 10
4	Dr. Dheeraj Pant Assistant Professor Department of Geography and Natural Resource Management School of Earth and Environmental Science Uttarakhand Open University, Haldwani, Nainital	12
5	Ms. Nirmala Taragi Assistant Professor Department of RS & GIS School of Earth and Environmental Science Uttarakhand Open University, Haldwani, Nainital	13

EDITORS- Editing of this book is in under process

••••••	
Title:	Bio-geography
ISBN :	
Copyright:	Uttarakhand Open University
Edition:	First (2024)

Published By: Uttarakhand Open University, Haldwani, Nainital-263139

Printed By :

CONTENTS

Title of the Unit	Page No.
BLOCK -1: INTRODUCTION TO BIOGEOGRAPHY	1-89
UNIT- 1: DEFINITION AND SCOPE OF BIOGRAPHY, HISTORICAL DEVELOPMENT OF BIO- GEOGRAPHY STUDIES	1-17
UNIT-2: KEY CONCEPT: BIODIVERSITY, ENDEMISM	18-51
UNIT- 3: ECOLOGICAL BIOGEOGRAPHY,	52-67
ENVIRONMENTAL GRADIENTS AND SPECIES DISTRIBUTIONS	
UNIT- 4: ISLAND BIOGEOGRAPHY THEORY,	68-89
ECOLOGICAL NICHE MODELLING	00.1/5
BLOCK -2: DISPERSAL AND COLONIZATION	90-167
UNIT- 5: EVOLUTIONARY BIOGEOGRAPHY: VICARIANCE VS DISPERSAL, HISTORICAL BIO- GEOGRAPHIC METHODS: PHYLOGENETICS, MOLECULAR DATING, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC REALMS AND REGIONS	90-115
UNIT- 6: MODES OF DISPERSAL: WIND, MIGRATION, HUMAN-MEDIATED, COLONIZATION PATTERNS AND PROCESSES, BIO- GEOGRAPHIC BARRIERS AND CORRIDORS, COMMUNITY ASSEMBLY: SPECIES INTERACTIONS AND COMMUNITY COMPOSITION, SUCCESSION AND ECOSYSTEM DEVELOPMENT, BIO- GEOGRAPHIC PATTERNS OF DIVERSITY	116-142
UNIT-7: BIOGEOGRAPHY OF CLIMATE CHANGE, CLIMATE CHANGE IMPACTS ON SPECIES DISTRIBUTIONS, RANGE SHIFTS AND BIO- GEOGRAPHIC RESPONSES, CONSERVATION IMPLICATIONS AND ADAPTATION STRATEGIES	143-167

BLOCK-3:	ANTHROPOGENIC BIO-GEOGRAPHY AND CONSERVATION	168-227
UNIT-8:	HUMAN IMPACTS ON BIO-GEOGRAPHIC PATTERNS, HABITAT FRAGMENTATION AND LANDSCAPE CONNECTIVITY.	168-187
UNIT-9:	INVASIVE SPECIES AND THEIR BIO- GEOGRAPHIC CONSEQUENCES.	188-207
UNIT-10:	CONSERVATION BIO-GEOGRAPHY: PRIORITIZATION, RESERVES DESIGN, ENDEMISM AND HOTSPOT OF BIODIVERSITY.	208-227
BLOCK-4:	APPLIED BIOGEOGRAPHY	228-287
UNIT-11:	BIO-GEOGRAPHICTOOLSANDTECHNIQUES:GISANDREMOTESENSING.	228-252
UNIT-12:	FIELD METHODS IN BIOGEOGRAPHY	253-270
UNIT-13:	INTEGRATING BIOGEOGRAPHY WITH OTHER DISCIPLINES (E.G., ECOLOGY, CLIMATOLOGY)	271-287

BLOCK -1 INTRODUCTION TO BIOGEOGRAPHY

UNIT- 1 DEFINITION AND SCOPE OF BIOGEOGRAPHY, HISTORICAL DEVELOPMENT OF BIO-GEOGRAPHY STUDIES

1.1 OBJECTIVES

1.2 INTRODUCTION

1.3 DEFINITION AND SCOPE OF BIOGEOGRAPHY, HISTORICAL DEVELOPMENT OF BIO-GEOGRAPHY STUDIES

1.4 SUMMARY

1.5 GLOSSARY

1.6 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1.7 REFERENCES

1.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

1.1 OBJECTIVES

After having a detailed study of this unit you will be able to:

- Understand concepts in bio-geography in detail
- You will know what the subject areas of biogeography are
- Information about the historical development of biogeography

1.2 INTRODUCTION

Bio-geography is the branch of physical geography that is most closely related to biology because both topics study plants and animals. Animals and plants can be found wherever in the world, both on land and in water. In biogeography, we investigate the spatial distribution of animals and vegetation.

Biogeography is the study of the distribution of organisms and ecosystems over geographical space and geologic time. It applies principles from biology, geography, ecology, and evolutionary science to better comprehend organisms' spatial patterns and relationships with their surroundings. Here is a thorough introduction to biogeography.

Early biogeographic studies extend back to ancient Greece when philosophers such as Aristotle observed patterns in the distribution of animals and plants. However, systematic research began in the nineteenth century, when naturalists such as Alexander von Humboldt and Charles Darwin investigated how environmental conditions and evolutionary processes influence species distribution.

1.3 DEFINITION AND SCOPE OF BIOGEOGRAPHY, HISTORICAL DEVELOPMENT OF BIO-GEOGRAPHY STUDIES

Biogeography is the scientific study of the distribution of organisms and ecosystems over geographical space and geologic time. It blends biology, geography, and ecology to better understand how and why species spread around the globe. The field investigates patterns and processes associated with the spatial and temporal distribution of biological organisms, including:

According to Stamp "The science of geographical distribution of living things animal and vegetation"

F. J. Monkhouse "Biogeography is the study of geographical aspects of plant and animal life especially, in terms of reasonable distribution"

According to Dr R. M. Lodha "The science dealing in the Geographical distribution of plant and animal over the earth"

Wikipedia Encyclopedia "Biogeography is the study of the distribution of species and ecosystems in geographic space and through geological time"

According to Savindra Singh, 'Being biogeography and geographical science, various aspects of living organisms of the biosphere such as spatial diversity of organisms (plants and animals) and their distribution patterns, species origin, geographical and ecological variations of species, species diffusion, species distribution are studied; Studies bio-geographical processes like extinction etc.

1.3.1 CONCEPT IN BIOGEOGRAPHY

Species Distribution: Biogeography is the scientific study of the distribution of organisms and ecosystems over geographical space and geologic time. It blends biology, geography, and ecology to better understand how and why species spread around the globe. The field investigates patterns and processes associated with the spatial and temporal distribution of biological organisms, including:

Endemism: Species that are unique to a given geographic location. Endemic species might be found on islands, isolated mountain ranges, or in particular ecosystems.

Habitat: The natural environment in which an organism lives, which comprises both biotic (living) and biotic (non-living) components.

Biomes: Forests, deserts, and grasslands are examples of large-scale ecosystems that have a similar climate and flora.

Theories and Models

Wallace's Line: Alfred Russell Wallace drew a faunal boundary line that separates Asian and Australian species. This line shows how geographical obstacles might affect species dispersion.

Bio-geographic Realms: Major regions of the Earth have diverse flora and animal assemblages. The major bio-geographic realms on Earth include the Nearctic, Palearctic, Neotropical, Ethiopian, Oriental, and Australian.

Island Biogeography Theory: This idea, proposed by Robert MacArthur and Edward Wilson, describes how an island's size and distance from the mainland affect its species variety.

Factors Influencing Biogeography

Geological Processes: Plate tectonics and continental drift have altered the distribution of continents and islands, influencing species spread and evolution.

Climate: Temperature, precipitation, and seasonal fluctuations all influence where species may survive. Tropical rainforests, for example, are rich in biodiversity due to their steady, warm, and damp conditions.

Evolution: Temperature, precipitation, and seasonal fluctuations all influence where species may survive. Tropical rainforests, for example, are rich in biodiversity due to their steady, warm, and damp conditions.

Ecological Interactions: Predation, competition, and mutualism are all examples of interspecies interactions that can influence population patterns.

Methods in Biogeography

Field Surveys: To better understand distribution patterns, observe and record animals in their natural environments.

Remote Sensing: Using satellite imaging and other remote technologies to investigate large-scale environmental changes and their impact on species distribution.

Genetic Analysis: Genetic variation among populations is being investigated to determine historical and contemporary patterns of species distribution and migration.

Modelling: Developing models to forecast how species distributions would shift in response to environmental changes like climate change.

Applications of Biogeography

Conservation Biology: Understanding species distribution is useful for developing successful conservation strategies, finding biodiversity hotspots, and managing protected areas.

Restoration Ecology: Ecosystem restoration is guided by bio-geographic concepts, which include selecting appropriate species and understanding their ecological requirements.

Invasive Species Management: Bio-geographic patterns are useful in forecasting and managing the spread of invasive species.

Current Challenges and Future Directions

Climate Change: Rapid climate change is affecting species distributions and shifting biomes. Biogeography can assist foresee and manage these effects.

Habitat Loss: Deforestation, urbanization, and other human activities are fragmenting habitats and changing species ranges.

Biodiversity Loss: Understanding how and why species are disappearing is critical to conservation efforts.

Bio-geography gives critical insights into the dynamic interactions between species and their environments. Combining ecological and evolutionary viewpoints, it aids our understanding of the intricate patterns of life on Earth and informs attempts to maintain biodiversity on a fast-changing planet.

1.3.2 SCOPE OF BIO-GEOGRAPHY

The field of biogeography covers a wide range of issues that investigate the interactions between living creatures and their habitats, particularly their geographical and temporal distribution. This field combines concepts from ecology, evolutionary biology, geography, and environmental science. Here's a detailed look at the various facets of biogeography.

1. Ecological Biogeography

Habitat Distribution: The study of how different species are dispersed in distinct habitats and ecosystems, such as forests, deserts, marshes, and grasslands.

Ecological Niche: Analysis of how species' roles and functions in ecosystems affect their distribution. This covers research on the biotic and a biotic factor that influence where a species can dwell.

Community Dynamics: The study of species interactions within communities and how they influence species distributions and ecological systems.

2. Historical Biogeography

Plate Tectonics and Continental Drift: The study of how the movement of Earth's tectonic plates has altered species distribution throughout geological time.

Glaciation Events: The study of how previous ice ages and glaciations influenced species ranges, migrations, and extinctions.

Evolutionary History: An examination of how evolutionary processes such as speciation and extinction have influenced contemporary species distributions.

3. Island Bio-geography

Species-Area Relationship: The theory of island biogeography proposes that the number of species on an island is proportional to its size and distance from the mainland.

Endemism and Isolation: Examining how island isolation results in distinct evolutionary trajectories and high rates of endemism.

Invasive Species: A study of how non-native species affect island ecosystems and the native species they encounter.

4. Conservation Biogeography

Biodiversity Hotspots: Identifying and studying locations with high levels of species richness and endemism that are threatened by human activity.

Protected Areas and Reserves: Bio-geographic principles guide the design and administration of protected areas to conserve biodiversity and ecosystems.

Species Migration and Climate Change: Investigating how changing climates affect species migration patterns and ecosystem distributions.

5. Bio-geographic Realms and Regions

Major Bio-geographic Realms: The study of large realms like the Nearctic, Palearctic, Neotropical, Ethiopian, Oriental, and Australian regions, each with its flora and fauna.

Ecoregions: Smaller, more specialized locations within bio-geographic domains are classified according to similarities in climate, vegetation, and species.

6. Evolutionary Biogeography

Phylogeographer: The investigation of past processes that may be responsible for the current geographic distributions of persons.

Adaptive Radiation: Examining how organisms diversify and adapt to distinct ecological niches, resulting in a diverse range of species in specific locations.

7. Applied Biogeography

Restoration Ecology: The use of bio-geographic principles to rehabilitate degraded habitats and reintroduce natural species.

Urban Biogeography: Research on how urbanization affects species distributions and ecological dynamics in cities and metropolitan areas.

Agricultural and Forestry Practices: The use of bio-geographic knowledge to improve land management methods and increase the sustainability of agriculture and forestry systems.

8. Theoretical and Methodological Approaches

Species Distribution Models (SDMs): Use statistical and computer models to forecast and map species distributions depending on environmental variables.

Remote Sensing and GIS: The use of satellite imagery and geographic information systems to investigate and visualize species distributions and environmental changes.

Genetic and Phylogenetic Approaches: Genetic data is used to better understand species' evolutionary relationships and historical distribution.

9. Interdisciplinary Connections

Climate Science: Climate data is being integrated to better understand how climate change affects species ranges and ecosystem dynamics.

Geology and Paleontology: Collaboration with geologists and palaeontologists to investigate historical distributions and evolutionary trends.

Sociology and Anthropology: An examination of how human activities, cultures, and societal changes affect species ranges and conservation efforts.

10. Future Directions

Impact of Global Change: Research into how global environmental changes, such as climate change, land use change, and pollution, affect species distributions.

Biodiversity Informatics: The creation of databases and systems for managing and analyzing bio-geographic data.

Conservation Strategies: New methods to conservation planning and policy, such as the creation of ecological networks and connectivity corridors.

Biogeography is a dynamic and interdisciplinary field that sheds light on species and environment distributions. It is critical in resolving contemporary environmental concerns and directing conservation efforts to preserve biodiversity and ecological equilibrium.

1.3.3 HISTORICAL DEVELOPMENT OF BIO-GEOGRAPHY

The history of biogeography is a rich tapestry spanning centuries, illustrating the growth of scientific philosophy and methods. The field has progressed from early observations of species distributions to advanced assessments of ecological and evolutionary processes. Here's a full review of the significant milestones in the historical development of biogeography:

1. Ancient Observations and Early Theories

Aristotle (384–322 BCE): Early Greek philosopher and naturalist who investigated animal dispersion and adaptability to various settings. His study established the foundation for comprehending the link between organisms and their environments.

Theophrastus (371–287 BCE): Theophrastus, known as the "father of botany," wrote about plant dispersion and adaption to different climates in his work "Enquiry into Plants."

2. Medieval and Renaissance Periods

Pliny the Elder (23–79 CE): His "Natural History" includes descriptions of plants and animals from many places, among the first systematic accounting of species distributions.

Geographical Exploration: During the Age of Exploration (15th-17th century), explorers like Columbus, Magellan, and Cook reported new species and their ranges, considerably advancing the field of biogeography.

3. Early Modern Biogeography

Carl Linnaeus (1707–1778): Created the binomial nomenclature system for classifying organisms. His taxonomical study established a framework for analyzing species distributions and interactions.

Georges-Louis Leclerc, Comte de Buffon (1707–1788): Early concepts regarding how environmental conditions influence species distributions and adaptations were proposed in his work "Histoire Naturally."

4. 19th Century Advances

Alexander von Humboldt (1769–1859): Humboldt, widely regarded as one of the architects of modern biogeography, pioneered the study and mapping of ecosystems in the Americas, which led to the creation of the theory that climate and altitude influence plant zones. His work "Kosmos" combines natural observations from several areas.

Charles Darwin (1809–1882): His theory of evolution by natural selection, introduced in "On the Origin of Species" (1859), transformed biogeography by offering a framework for understanding how evolutionary processes impact species distributions. Darwin's studies of species in the Galápagos Islands provided important insights regarding adaptive radiation and speciation.

5. Early 20th Century Developments

Alfred Russel Wallace (1823–1913): Wallace, a co-developer of the theory of evolution by natural selection, carried out considerable study in Southeast Asia and discovered the "Wallace Line," a bio-geographic border that separates Asian and Australian species. His work emphasized the importance of geographical boundaries in species dispersal.

Joseph Dalton Hooker (1817–1911): His contributions to plant biogeography, as well as his research into the floras of several continents, aided in the development of the floristic region concept.

6. Mid to Late 20th Century

E. O. Wilson (born 1929): Wilson is well-known for his contributions to sociobiology and biodiversity. His research on island biogeography with Robert MacArthur resulted in the Island Biogeography Theory, which investigates how island size and distance from the mainland affect species richness.

Robert MacArthur (1930–1972): His collaboration with Wilson on island biogeography theory introduced quantitative models to predict species diversity based on island size and distance, influencing conservation strategies and ecological theory.

7. Contemporary Biogeography

Advances in Technology: Geographic Information Systems (GIS), remote sensing, and molecular approaches have altered biogeography by enabling researchers to analyze enormous datasets and better model species distributions.

Climate Change and Conservation: Recent studies have focused on understanding how climate change, habitat loss, and other anthropogenic factors influence species distributions and biodiversity. The creation of Species Distribution Models (SDMs) and the investigation of biodiversity hotspots are critical to modern conservation efforts.

8. Current Trends and Future Directions

Integrative Approaches: Modern biogeography frequently combines ecological, evolutionary, and climatic data to better explain complicated patterns of species distribution.

Genomics and Phylogeography: Modern biogeography frequently blends ecological, evolutionary, and climatic data to better explain complicated patterns of species distribution.

Global Change: Modern biogeography frequently blends ecological, evolutionary, and climatic data to better explain complicated patterns of species distribution.

The evolution of biogeography has been distinguished by a shift from descriptive findings to complicated, theoretical studies. Today, it is a vibrant area that brings together different disciplines to address critical environmental and conservation concerns.

1.4 SUMMARY

Bio-geography is the scientific study of the spatial distribution of species and ecosystems across geographical areas and across geological time. It aims to comprehend the patterns and processes that determine where organisms reside and how they interact with their surroundings. The field brings together principles from biology, ecology, geography, and geology to create a comprehensive knowledge of biodiversity.

This summary presents an in-depth review of biogeography, including its definition, scope, and historical evolution. It traces the field's evolution from early findings to modern research, as well as its interdisciplinary approach to investigating species distributions.

1.5 GLOSSARY

Biogeography: The scientific study of the distribution of species and ecosystems across geographic space and through geological time, integrating aspects of biology, geography, and ecology.

Species Distribution: The geographic range within which a species can be found, including the habitat types and specific locations where it lives.

Habitat: The natural environment in which a species lives, characterized by both abiotic (nonliving) and biotic (living) factors.

Endemism: The occurrence of a species in a specific geographic area and nowhere else.

Bio-geographic Realms: Major regions of the Earth characterized by distinct assemblages of flora and fauna. Examples include the Nearctic, Palearctic, Neotropical, Ethiopian, Oriental, and Australian realms.

Island Biogeography Theory: A theory proposed by Robert MacArthur and Edward Wilson that explains how the size of an island and its distance from a mainland affect the diversity and distribution of species on the island.

Species Distribution Models (SDMs): Predictive models that use environmental variables to estimate and forecast species distributions.

Phylogeography: The study of the historical processes that may be responsible for the contemporary geographic distributions of individuals.

Ecological Biogeography: The study of how species are distributed across different habitats and ecosystems, including the analysis of ecological niches and community dynamics.

Historical Biogeography: The examination of how historical events, such as plate tectonics and glaciations, have influenced species distributions and evolutionary patterns.

Island Biogeography: The study of species distributions on islands, including patterns of endemism, species-area relationships, and the impacts of isolation and invasions.

Conservation Biogeography: The application of bio-geographic principles to conservation efforts, including the identification of biodiversity hotspots, the design of protected areas, and the management of species under threat.

Bio-geographic Realms and Regions: Classification of major and minor geographic regions based on their distinctive biological communities and environmental conditions.

Evolutionary Biogeography: The study of evolutionary processes, such as speciation and adaptive radiation, and how these processes shape species distributions.

Applied Bio-geography: Practical applications of bio-geographic knowledge in areas such as restoration ecology, urban biogeography and agricultural practices.

Theoretical and Methodological Approaches: The use of various models, technologies, and methods, such as GIS and remote sensing, to study and analyze species distributions.

1.6 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. What is bio-geography?

- A) The study of the Earth's physical features.
- B) The scientific study of species distributions and ecosystems in geographic space and through geological time.
- C) The study of human cultural practices across different regions.
- D) The analysis of economic activities in various geographic regions.

Answer: B

2. Which of the following best defines "species distribution"?

- A) The total number of species in a given habitat.
- B) The geographic range within which a species occurs, including specific locations and habitat types.
- C) The number of individuals per square kilometre.
- D) The evolutionary history of a species.

Answer: B

3. What does the term "endemic species" refer to?

- A) Species that are found on multiple continents.
- B) Species that are only found in a specific geographic area.
- C) extinct Species.
- D) Species that have migrated from one continent to another.

Answer: B

4. The Island Biogeography Theory focuses on:

- A) The effect of climate change on species distribution.
- B) How species diversity on islands is influenced by island size and distance from the mainland.
- C) The impact of urbanization on species populations.
- D) The role of predation in species distribution.

Answer: B

5. Which of the following areas falls under the scope of ecological biogeography?

- A) Study of historical plate tectonics.
- B) Analysis of species distributions across different habitats and ecosystems.
- C) Examination of evolutionary processes like speciation.
- D) Design and management of conservation reserves.

Answer: B

6. What does conservation biogeography primarily focus on?

- A) The role of genetic mutations in evolution.
- B) The study of species distributions about human activities and conservation efforts.
- C) The impact of geological changes on species distributions.
- D) The study of invasive species in non-native environments.

Answer: B

7. Evolutionary biogeography explores:

- A) How species distributions are affected by climate change.
- B) The role of genetic variation in species populations.

- C) How evolutionary processes, such as speciation, influence species distributions.
- D) The effects of urbanization on species habitats.

Answer: C

- 8. Who is considered one of the founders of modern biogeography for his work on vegetation zones in the Americas?
- A) Alfred Russel Wallace.
- B) Alexander von Humboldt.
- C) Charles Darwin.
- D) Joseph Dalton Hooker.

Answer: B

- 9. The concept of the Wallace Line, which separates the fauna of Asia and Australia, was introduced by:
- A) Carl Linnaeus.
- B) Georges-Louis Leclerc, Comte de Buffon.
- C) Alfred Russel Wallace.
- D) Robert MacArthur.

Answer: C

- 10. Which scientist's work on binomial nomenclature laid the foundation for modern taxonomy and classification?
- A) E. O. Wilson.
- B) Carl Linnaeus.
- C) Charles Darwin.
- D) Alexander von Humboldt.

Answer: B

11. The Island Biogeography Theory was developed by which two scientists?

- A) E. O. Wilson and Alfred Russel Wallace
- B) Robert MacArthur and Edward Wilson
- C) Alexander von Humboldt and Charles Darwin
- D) Carl Linnaeus and Georges-Louis Leclerc

Answer: B

- **12.** Which period marked significant contributions to biogeography through global exploration and species documentation?
- A) Medieval Period
- B) Renaissance Period
- C) Age of Exploration (15th–17th centuries)
- D) Industrial Revolution

Answer: C

1.7 REFERENCES

- "Biogeography: An Ecological and Evolutionary Approach" by Christopher H. L. O'Brien, Richard J. G. Williams, and Philip J. W. Green (2011).
- "Historical Biogeography: The Evolutionary History of Species" by Michael J. Benton and David A. T. Harper (2010).
- "The Geography of Evolution: A Comprehensive Introduction to the Study of Biogeography" by Philip Stott and Charles Smith (2014).
- "Island Biogeography: Theory and Practice" by Robert H. MacArthur and Edward O. Wilson (2001).
- "Biogeography: Introduction to Space, Time, and Life" by Michael J. Donoghue (2020).
- Cox, C. B., & Moore, P. D. (2010). "Biogeography: An Ecological and Evolutionary Approach." Journal of Biogeography, 37(1), 15-28.
- Warren, M. S., & Lawton, J. H. (2018). "Historical Biogeography: Evolutionary Patterns and Processes." Ecology Letters, 21(2), 167-181.

- Kreft, H., & Jetz, W. (2007). "Global Diversity of Island Biogeography." Nature, 446(7138), 202-205.
- Encyclopedia of Life: Biogeography:
- The Biogeography Society:

1.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

Long Questions

- 1. Define biogeography and discuss its interdisciplinary nature, including how it integrates various scientific fields to understand species distributions?
- 2. Examine the major areas of focus within the scope of biogeography and how each contributes to our understanding of species distributions. Provide examples to illustrate each area?
- 3. Trace the historical development of biogeography from its early observations to contemporary theories. Discuss key figures and their contributions to the field?
- 4. Discuss the various aspects of the scope of biogeography, including ecological, historical, and conservation perspectives. Provide examples of how each aspect contributes to our understanding of species distributions?
- 5. Define biogeography and explain its importance in understanding ecological and evolutionary processes?
- 6. Trace the historical development of biogeography from early observations to modern theories, highlighting key contributions and milestones?
- 7. Explain the term "species distribution" and its relevance to ecological studies?
- 8. Discuss the concept of biogeography and its significance in understanding species distributions?

Short Questions

- 1. What is the primary focus of biogeography?
- 2. How does biogeography integrate with ecology?
- 3. What does the term "species distribution" refer to in biogeography?

- 4. What is ecological biogeography concerned with?
- 5. How does historical biogeography contribute to our understanding of biodiversity?
- 6. What is the focus of conservation biogeography?
- 7. Why is evolutionary biogeography important?
- 8. What is applied biogeography?

UNIT-2 KEY CONCEPT: BIODIRVERSITY, ENDEMISM

2.1 OBECTIVES

2.2 INTRODUCTION

2.3 KEY CONCEPT: BIODIRVERSITY, ENDEMISM

2.4 SUMMARY

2.5 GLOSSARY

2.6 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

2.7 REFERENCES

2.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

2.1 OBECTIVES

After having the detailed study of this unit you will be able to:

- You will know in detail what biodiversity is.
- You will understand in detail what endemism is.

2.2 INTRODUCTION

We refer to the biosphere as a "biological factory" in which communities of many sorts of living plants and animals coexist in various environments. Biomes are natural ecological systems that have comparable biotic and abiotic circumstances. We investigate numerous elements of biotic communities as well as the physical conditions of habitats. Natural ecosystems are diverse in both horizontal (from the equator to the poles) and vertical (above sea level and below the ocean) shapes, so numerous sorts of biomes have emerged. There are various physical and biological traits. Thus, the number of distinct biomes in a country, as well as the types and numbers of plant and animal species found there are crucial markers of its (ecological) health and success. Biodiversity refers to the diversity of plant and animal species found in any habitat or biome.

Over thousands of years, the diverse range of life on Earth has met the needs of humans. The diversity of living organisms serves as a support system for each civilization's growth and development. Those who used the "bounty of nature" wisely and sustainably lived. Those who overused or abused it disintegrated. For more than a century, scientists have attempted to describe and categories nature's diversity. This has helped us understand how it is organized into plant and animal communities. This information has aided in the utilization of the earth's biological resources for the benefit of humanity, and it is an essential component of the 'development' process. This includes improved health care, better harvests, and the utilization of these life forms as raw materials for industrial progress, all of which have contributed to a greater standard of living in the developed world. However, this has resulted in the current consumerist society, which has had a severe impact on the biological diversity upon which it is based.

The diversity of life on Earth is so immense that if we use it sustainably, we can continue to develop new goods based on biodiversity for many generations. This can only happen if we treat biodiversity as a valuable resource and work to prevent species extinction. Endemism is a crucial topic in biogeography research. A.P. de Candolle (1855) developed the term 'endemism' to describe the dispersion of an organism (plant, animal, or bacterium) within a specific geographic area. In ecological terms, it means that a plant or animal may only exist in a certain location, such as an island, habitat type, nation, or other defined zone. It is the relationship of a biological taxon with a distinct and well-defined geographical region. The term cosmopolitan distribution, or cosmopolitan, refers to a taxon that is exceedingly common in various parts of the world. For example, the Australian region has the highest number of endemic taxa.

Endemics can be found on all major islands and mountain chains (excluding isolated areas like Italy) between 48° N and South. The West Australian and South African regions have the highest proportion of endemism. Endemism is higher in old landmasses than in young ones; for example, northern hemisphere landmasses buried by Pleistocene ice sheets have fewer endemic species.

Definition: 'Biological diversity' or biodiversity is that aspect of nature that includes differences in genes among individuals of a species, the variety and richness of all plant and animal species at different scales in space, locally, in a region, in the country, and around the world, and various types of ecosystems, both terrestrial and aquatic, within a specific area.

"The diversity of plant and animal species in ecosystems with specific environmental conditions is called biodiversity."

"Variations at the lineage levels of plant and animal species are called genetic biodiversity."

"The type and diversity of species of biological communities (plants, animals and invertebrates) in a natural ecosystem is called species biodiversity."

"Areas with rich biological communities (plants and animals) dominated by endemic species are called biodiversity hotspots." According to Savindra Singh, "The variety of genes, species and habitat (ecosystem) in any definite area or region or ecosystem and the types of living organisms, its variety and variability in the context of time, is called biodiversity. And temporal changes keep happening. C. J. According to Barrow, "The diversity of species along with genetic heterogeneity in each species of a certain area (ecosystem) is called biodiversity."

2.3 KEY CONCEPT: BIODIRVERSITY, ENDEMISM

What is Bio-diversity?

Biological diversity refers to the extent of nature's variation in the biosphere. This variety can be observed at three levels: genetic variability within a species, species diversity within a community, and the organization of species in a region into diverse plant and animal communities all contribute to ecosystem diversity.

Elements of biodiversity

Based on the above considerations, the following elements of biodiversity can be identified:

1. Genetic diversity: Because of the huge number of gene combinations that give each individual a unique feature, each member of any animal or plant species differs significantly from other individuals in terms of genetic composition. Thus, for example, each human being is distinct from the others. This genetic diversity is necessary for a species' breeding population to be healthy. If the number of breeding individuals is reduced, the genetic dissimilarity decreases, and in-breeding occurs. Eventually, this can lead to the extinction of the species. The diversity of wild species serves as the 'gene pool' from which our crops and domestic animals evolved over thousands of years.

Today, the diversity of nature's abundance is being expanded by employing wild cousins of crop plants to develop new varieties of more productive crops and better domestic animals. Modern biotechnology manipulates DNA to create better medications and a wider range of industrial items.

2. Species diversity: Species diversity refers to the number of plant and animal species that exist in a given region. This diversity is present in both natural and agricultural settings. Some locations are more species-rich than others. Natural, undisturbed tropical forests contain far more

species diversity than plantations managed by the Forest Department for timber Biodiversity 83 production. A natural forest ecosystem produces a wide range of non-wood items that locals rely on, including fruit, fuel wood, fodder, fiber, gum, resin, and medicines. Timber plantations do not provide the wide range of items required for local use. In the long run, economic sustainable returns from non-wood forest products are believed to be bigger than the returns from cutting a forest for its timber. As a result, the value of a natural forest, with its diverse species, far outweighs that of a planted. Modern intensive agricultural ecosystems have smaller crop diversity than traditional agro-pastoral farming systems, which cultivate many crops. Currently, conservation biologists have identified and classified around 1.8 million species on Earth. However, numerous new species are being discovered, particularly among blooming plants and insects. Areas with high species richness are known as 'hotspots' of diversity. India is one of 15 countries with unusually high species diversity.

3. Ecosystem diversity: There are numerous ecosystems on the planet, each with its own set of distinct interconnected species determined by environmental differences. Ecosystem diversity can be defined for a single geographical region or a political body like a country, state, or taluka. Forests, grasslands, deserts, mountains, and other landscapes, as well as aquatic ecosystems including rivers, lakes, and the sea, are examples of distinct ecosystems. Each region also features man-made regions like cropland and grazing pastures.

An ecosystem is considered 'natural' when it is mostly unaffected by human activity, and 'modified' when it is converted to various purposes, such as agriculture or urban areas. In wilderness settings, ecosystems are at their most natural. When natural ecosystems are overused or mistreated, their productivity gradually diminishes, and they are said to be degraded. India boasts an extraordinarily diverse ecosystem.

4. Temporal variation: Temporal variety refers to different time periods in the sequential evolution of biological communities. Biodiversity in any location is always viewed in the perspective of time, i.e., what the form of biological communities in a given region was previously. What is the current form, and how will it evolve in the future? We also investigate the numerous factors that lead to species emergence and extinction.

Evolution and the Genesis of Biodiversity

The origins of life on Earth around three and a half billion years ago are unknown. Organic reactions in the Earth's primordial waters most likely triggered the emergence of life. Alternative hypotheses include life originating in muddy ooze or life being seeded from outer space. Once life established itself on the planet, it progressively began to diversify. Unicellular unspecialized organisms eventually evolved into sophisticated multi cellular plants and animals.

Evolution refers to living species' ability to adapt to changes in their environment. Thus, biotic changes in nature, such as climatic and atmospheric upheavals, repeated glaciations, continental drift, and the establishment of geographical barriers, separated distinct plant and animal communities and eventually led to the formation of new species over millions of years. Most species appear to have life spans of several million years. Their ability to adapt to incremental changes in their habitat' as well as interactions with newly developed species; result in interconnected groupings of creatures that continue to evolve together. Food chains, preypredator relationships, parasitism (complete reliance on another species), commensalism (a mutually beneficial partnership), and so on are all important examples. Behavioral patterns of the various species that make up a community of species connect them through breeding biology, feeding patterns, migrations, and so on. As ancient species died extinct as a result of geological upheavals, they left behind empty 'niches' in the ecosystem, which encouraged existing species to fill them by forming new species.

Mega-extinctions have occurred throughout Earth's ancient history, followed by times of new species creation. Though they continually resulted in a significant 84 Environmental Studies for Undergraduate Courses decline in the number of species, life variety was restored each time by progressively raising the number of species on Earth. This, however, took millions of years because evolution is an extremely sluggish process. Thus, when man arrived on the scene about 2 million years ago, the globe was more diverse than ever before. However, in recent years, extinctions caused by modern man's actions have increased so quickly that nature has had no time to generate new species. The earth is losing species faster than ever before.

Modern man is rapidly changing the diversity of life at all three organizational levels: genetic, species, and environment. This is a big loss for future generations that will come after us.

Types of biodiversity: Biodiversity is investigated at three levels, all of which contribute to the complexity of life on Earth:

- 1. Genetic diversity
- 2. Species diversity
- 3. Ecosystem diversity

1. Genetic diversity: Genetic variety refers to the variation of the basic units of hereditary information (genes) within a species that are passed down from generation to generation. Genetic variety produces variations, which are the primary source of biodiversity, and the quantity of genetic variation is thus the basis of speciation. Genetic diversity allows a population to adapt to its environment, which is vital for natural selection. Genetic diversity within a species frequently rises with environmental heterogeneity, although not all animal groups have the same level of genetic diversity. To sustain genetic variety, various populations of a species must be preserved.

2. Species diversity: Genetic variety refers to the variation of the basic units of hereditary information (genes) within a species that are passed down from generation to generation. Genetic variety produces variations, which are the primary source of biodiversity, and the quantity of genetic variation is thus the basis of speciation. Genetic diversity allows a population to adapt to its environment, which is vital for natural selection. Genetic diversity within a species frequently rises with environmental heterogeneity, although not all animal groups have the same level of genetic diversity. To sustain genetic variety, various populations of a species must be preserved.

3. Ecosystem diversity: An ecosystem is a collection of living organisms (biotic components) that interact with one another and with the non-living materials (abiotic components) in their surroundings. It signifies that an ecosystem is a community of species that interact with their physical surroundings. An ecosystem can be as huge as the Great Barrier Reef or as little as the rear of a spider crab's shell, and it houses plants and other animals including sponges, algae, and worms. Ecosystem diversity refers to the diversity of habitats (places where an organism or a population of organisms naturally occurs), as well as the many life forms that live within them. Diversity in communities and ecosystems exists on three levels. The first is

alpha diversity (inside a community), the second is beta diversity (between communities), and the third is gamma diversity (habitat variety over the entire landscape or geographical area).

Endemism

Endemism is a term used in ecology and biogeography to describe a species that is indigenous to and limited to a certain geographic region. This signifies that the species does not occur naturally elsewhere in the world. For example, some plants or animals may be unique to a specific island, mountain range, or region.

Endemic animals frequently evolve unique features that are exclusive to their area and can be extremely adaptable to local conditions. Because of their limited distribution, they may be especially sensitive to challenges such as habitat loss, climate change, and invasive species. Endemic species include the giant panda, which is native to specific regions of China, and the kiwi, which can only be found in New Zealand.

Endemism can occur at many different scales, ranging from global to small, and understanding it aids conservation efforts and biodiversity research.

Types of Endemism: Endemism is broadly classified into two types: paleoendemism and neoendemism.

A. Paleoendemic species: Paleoendemics, which means "ancient endemics," are species (animals or plants) that are limited to a certain area due to extinction elsewhere. The best evidence for paleoendemism comes from fossil records elsewhere (for example, Sequoia, Sequoiadendron, and Lyonothamnus). These are sometimes referred to as species that once inhabited a huge region but now only occupy a tiny area. These species are frequently systematically separated taxa, with distribution patches representing the remnants of previously wider distribution ranges that have been reduced owing to environmental changes. For example, species A is widely dispersed across the entire mountain range. Any change in the region's environmental circumstances reduces the distribution of species A. Species A is not completely extinct; it survives in a small area near the edge of its former distribution zone. Now, species A is recognized as a paleoendemic species in that area.

B. Neoendemic species: Neoendemism refers to the emergence of a new species that is closely linked to the main species or to the formation of a new species as a result of hybridisation. This is a common mechanism in plants, particularly those exhibiting polyploidy. These species result from divergent adaptation to varying environmental conditions, resulting in the formation of new, locally distributed species. Polyploids frequently drive the evolution of neoendemic plant species. The endemic species may have a greater ploidy level than its related taxa. When the endemic taxon and its related taxa have the same ploidy level, the endemic species are called schizogenesis. Apo-, patro-, and schizoendemics are subsets of neoendemic. For example, species B migrates to a location and colonises the upper reaches of a mountain range. As a result, the population of species B becomes split, and the two subpopulations are isolated from one another. Because the two subpopulations' environmental conditions are not the same, they adapt differently. The Divergent Evolution of the Subpopulation 5 Environmental Sciences Paper 03 Biodiversity and Conservation Endemic Species from India may result in the establishment of new species or subspecies that are regionally distributed and known as neoendemic species.

Characters of endemism: Because of their small ecological amplitude, they have a limited range and are unable to spread to new places. They lack the ability to move due to saturated genomes. Real endemics do not migrate, whereas Neo-endemics have the capacity to migrate. The dispersal prop gules are unable to survive during migration to another location. It could be due to physical barriers.

Theories of endemism: Endemism has two primary hypotheses. The first explanation holds that endemic remnants or epibiotics are the final survivors of a once-thriving flora that is now in decline.

However, according to the second view, these are recent and youthful forms that are being gradually wiped away. According to Willis' age-and-area hypothesis, most endemic species are considered youthful, i.e. young rather than old relics. Endemism refers to two types of organisms whose ranges are limited to a particular region: endemics (which are relatively young species) and epibiotics (relic species). The notion is also known as the Age and Area Hypothesis. Geographers corroborate the first explanation, noting that Sequoia semipenirens of the central

Valley of California and Oregon, as well as S. gigantean of the Sierra Nevada, which are peculiar to their respective native habitats, were widely spread during the Cretaceous and Tertiary periods.

Supporters of the second theory cite Primula, Impatiens, and Rhododendron, among other examples. According to this idea, area is directly proportionate to age on the evolutionary scale. As a result, a small area of distribution displays relatively young age; for example, Coleus is dispersed on the peak of Sri Lanka's dry Ritigala Mountains, along with two species, C. elongatus and C. barbatus. C. elongatus is indigenous, whereas C. barbatus is extensively dispersed throughout tropical Asia and Africa. Willis believed C. elongatus descended from C. barbatus.

Factors Responsible for Endemism: Natural crossing between closely related plants growing under favorable conditions, as well as mutations, are factors that contribute to the formation of endemics. When the condition of isolation is formed, the effect becomes more noticeable.

1. Endemism can be seen in isolated places such as islands and isolated locations. Mountains have more endemic species because they are isolated; for example, 70% of the Himalayan species are endemic.

2. Climate is one of the reasons. For example, the northern Himalayan range is an arid plateau of Tibet, whereas the southern Himalayan range has alluvial fertile soil. According to Chatterjee, India has more than 50 indigenous species of dicot plants. The Himalayas and South India have the highest concentration of indigenous plant species. The Indo-Gangetic plains have a modest number of indigenous species.

Stebbins (1942) provided a genetic explanation for the endemic. He explained that such taxa have exhausted their reservoir of genetic variation (biotype depletion) and are unable to increase their range.

There are numerous causes of rarity and endemism. There are three key factors that describe the distribution of endemics:

- Geographical area
- Ecological role of species
- Isolation

Stebbins (1980) proposed the gene pool-niche interaction theory to explain the emergence of rarity and endemism. According to hypothesis, the major reason of localized or endemic distribution patterns is adaptation to a mix of locally varying ecological conditions. The most essential factors are soil texture and chemical composition, but these are far from the only ones. In addition to climatic and edaphic conditions, characteristics inherent in the population's gene pool are crucial. They include the total amount of variability, the amount of variability that may be released at any one time, and the amount of variation that can be generated with respect to those specific characteristics that most significantly affect the establishment of a new population.

Endemic Animals around the World

The term "endemic" refers to a species that can only be found in one location of the planet. These animals are most typically found in remote areas of the world, such as islands, but they can also be found elsewhere.

Giant Panda

Where: China

Giant pandas are not only native to China; they are also regarded as a national treasure. Though they are unique to China, 27 zoos in 21 countries house giant pandas as part of a global conservation campaign; there are fewer than 1,900 giant pandas left in the wild today.

Norway Lemming

Where: Norway



Fig. 2.1 Giant Panda & Norway Lemming

Source: Google

This animal, sometimes known as the Norwegian lemming, is prevalent in northern Fennoscandia but is the sole vertebrate species native to the area.

Scottish Wildcat Where: Scotland

Scottie dogs drool, and cats rule in Scotland. The Scottish wildcat population expanded after being separated by the English Channel approximately 9,000 years ago. Although they may appear to be conventional house cats, wildcats have larger brains and different pupil shapes than your typical tabby.

American Alligato Where: Florida, USA

See you later, alligator. Not really, considering alligators are very common in the southern United States. The American alligator was formerly endangered and on the verge of extinction, yet they are now thriving – a rare success story!

Pygmy Three-Toed Sloths

Panama: This slow mover, the smallest of the sloths, can only be found on Isla Escudo de Veraguas, a small island off the coast of Panama. In fact, it has been detached from Panama's mainland for 9,000 years. So, just how tiny is small? Their body length ranges from 19 to 21 inches, and they weigh 5.5 to 7.7 pounds.

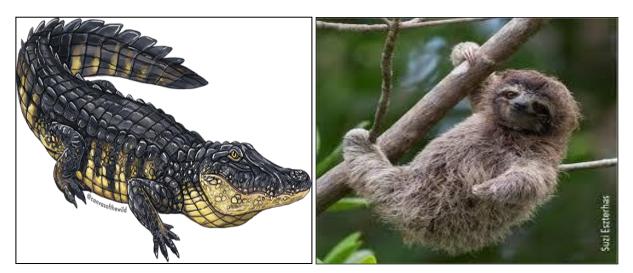


Fig. 2.2 American Alligator & Pygmy Three-Toed Sloth

Source: Google

Poison Dart Frog.

Location: Costa Rica and other humid Central and South American climates.

Colourful, but hazardous - truly! The toxicity of a poison dart frog varies by species (there are over 100), but some are so deadly that its poison can kill a human. They're little and difficult to discern; some are less than an inch long.

Glacier Bear Location: Alaska, USA.

The glacier bear, The American black bear, often known as the blue bear, has silver-blue or grey fur. Yes, that is a confusing description, but it is due to a lack of scientific understanding of why things seem the way they do.

Chiribiquete Emerald

Colombia: The Chiribiquete emerald is unique to the Serranía de Chiribiquete, a range of flattopped mountains in south central Colombia's Guaviare and Caquetá departments. It lives mostly in the open scrub and savanna of the range's middle and upper elevations.

Sclater's Monkey

Nigeria: There are just 11 tiny populations of this monkey species verified to exist. They dwell in low-elevation locations along Nigeria's coast, where they appreciate swamp-like floodplain woodlands. Perhaps the most distinguishing characteristic is the white tuft of hair on each ear.

Patagonian Mara

Where: Argentina Conservation: The Patagonian cavy is listed as Near Threatened on the IUCN Red List of Endangered Species. They support this designation by pointing out that populations have been falling at a rate of about 30% over the last decade. Hunting, habitat degradation, and the introduction of other herbivores are all major risks to the population. Kangaroo who? The Patagonian mara resembles a hybrid between a kangaroo and a rabbit, but it is actually a giant rodent. In fact, they are the world's fourth-largest rodent, standing approximately 18 inches tall.

Southern Adder

South Africa: The southern adder lives in three distinct subpopulations along the Western Cape's southwestern coast. Previously, a fourth subpopulation in Cape Town was assumed to be locally extinct. The northern subpopulation ranges from West Coast National Park to roughly 20 kilometres north of Cape Town. The southeastern subpopulation is found near Hermanus and the De Hoop Nature Reserve.

A tiny adder that averages 28 cm in length and can reach a maximum of slightly over 40 cm. It has a restricted range in low-lying coastal Fynbos in the Western Cape, where most of its habitat has been lost. The Southern Adder is rated as Vulnerable on the most recent reptile Atlas.

Little is known about its behaviors and lifestyle, but individuals have been observed sheltering behind limestone rock slabs or basking in Fynbos. Above each eye, there are tiny tufts of horn. Although human bites have not been reported, its venom is likely similar to that of other small adders, causing discomfort and local swelling. In the late summer, females produce 2-11 young. This snake is frequently poached for the illegal pet trade.

Sri Lankan Birdwing

Where: Sri Lanka

This butterfly species can only be found in Sri Lanka, and it is regarded the country's official butterfly. It is the island's largest butterfly, with enormous black wings accented with vivid yellow.

Brookesia Micra

Where: Madagascar

Chameleons are tiny, teeny weenie creatures! Brookesia micra, the smallest species of chameleon, grow to about 29 millimeters in length. We are talking about fingernail size! And, sure, they actually change color. Brookesia micra, popularly known as the Nosy Hara leaf chameleon, is a species of chameleon found on the island of Nosy Hara in Antsiranana, Madagascar. Until the discovery of the much smaller B. nana in 2021, it was the smallest known chameleon and one of the smallest reptiles.

Wilson's Bird of Paradise

Where: Indonesia

Doesn't just the name make it sound beautiful? Birds of paradise are one of the world's most colourful birds, with bright yellow and red accents, as well as their distinguishing bright blue head and curled tail feathers. A truly unique-looking animal! Wilson's bird-of-paradise is a species of passerine bird from the Paradisaeidae family. David Attenborough filmed the first footage of Wilson's bird-of-paradise in 1996 for the BBC documentary Attenborough in Paradise.



Fig. 2.3 Sri Lankan Birdwing & Wilson's Bird of Paradise

Source: Google

Platypus Where: Eastern Australia

This semi-aquatic mammal is most notable for its large, duck-like bill. It has a nice reputation, but did you know that males are deadly with sharp stingers on their heels? The platypus, sometimes known as the duck-billed platypus, is a semiaquatic, egg-laying mammal native to eastern Australia, including Tasmania.

Kiwi Where: New Zealand

The kiwi is more than just a wonderful fruit. The kiwi is unquestionably a strange bird, with strong legs but no tail. It has become New Zealand's national icon, to the point where New Zealanders are frequently referred to as "kiwis." The kiwi is a flightless bird of the Apterygiformes group found only in New Zealand. The five extant species belong to the Apterygidae family and the Apteryx genus. The tiniest ratites are kiwis, which are around the size of domestic chickens.

Matschie's Tree Kangaro Where: Papua New Guinea

This endangered species is so elusive that locals call it the "ghost of the forest." There's no fear of heights here! Matschie's tree kangaroos thrive in alpine cloud forests with elevations of up to 11,000 feet! Matschie's tree-kangaroo, sometimes known as the Huon tree-kangaroo, is a species of tree-kangaroo found on the Huon Peninsula of northeastern New Guinea Island, in the country of Papua New Guinea. The IUCN classifies Matschie's tree-kangaroo as an endangered species.

Endemic Plants around the World

North America

California Poppy (Eschscholzia californica): The California poppy, known for its brilliant orange petals, is California's official flower. It flourishes in the state's many settings, ranging from grasslands to coastal locations. This brilliant orange flower is native to California and grows in the region's wildflower fields.

Saguaro Cactus (Carnegiea gigantea): This enormous cactus is unique to the Sonoran Desert in the southwestern United States and northwestern Mexico. This classic cactus from the Sonoran Desert (southern Arizona, southeastern California, and northwestern Mexico) can reach 40 feet tall and survive for more than 150 years. Its massive, branching limbs and remarkable stature distinguish it as an emblem of the American Southwest.

Puya Raimondii: This huge bromeliad, often known as the "Queen of the Andes," is found in the high Andes Mountains of Peru and Bolivia. It can take decades to bloom, resulting in a gigantic flowering spike.

Brazil nut Tree (Bertholletia excelsa): This tree is indigenous to the Amazon jungle of Brazil and neighboring nations. Its huge seeds, known as Brazil nuts, are valuable both environmentally and economically.

Africa

1. Welwitschia (Welwitschia mirabilis)

Namib Desert, Namibia and Angola: It is distinguished by its distinctive look, which consists of only two long, strap-like leaves that continue to develop throughout its life. Welwitschia thrives in harsh desert settings and can live for over a thousand years.

2. Protea (Protea cynaroides)

South Africa: It is commonly known as the King Protea and is distinguished by its big, stunning flower heads that resemble artichokes. It is an important plant in the Cape Floristic Region, one of the world's biodiversity hotspots.

3. Aloe dichotoma (Aloe dichotoma)

Namibia and South Africa: This aloe, sometimes known as the Quiver Tree, is distinguished by its branching, tree-like structure. Indigenous people utilize the branches to build arrow quivers.

4. Raphia Palm (Raphia farinifera)

Central and West Africa, which includes Cameroon, Gabon, and the Democratic Republic of the Congo This palm boasts the longest leaves of any plant, growing up to 25 meters long. It is valued for its fibres, which are used in traditional crafts and to make ropes and mats.

5. Drakensberg Lily (Crinum bulbispermum)

Drakensberg Mountains, South Africa: This bulbous plant is notable for its huge, trumpet-shaped flowers, which range in colour from white to pink. It thrives in the Drakensberg's chilly, high-altitude climate.

6. Silver Tree (Leucadendron argenteum)

Cape Peninsula, South Africa: Also known as the Silver Tree, this plant is distinguished by its silvery leaf and has adapted to the Mediterranean environment of the Cape Peninsula.

7. Baobab (Adansonia digitata)

The Baobab tree is well-known throughout tropical Africa, particularly in Madagascar, Kenya, Tanzania, and Senegal, for its gigantic, bottle-shaped trunk and massive, white blossoms. It thrives in dry, deciduous forests and can live for thousands of years.

8. Madagascar Periwinkle (Catharanthus roseus): Madagascar: This plant is known for its pink or white blossoms and is valuable medicinally because of its alkaloids, which are used to treat cancer.

9. Aloe Vera (Aloe barbadensis miller)

Native to the Arabian Peninsula, but also found in portions of Africa, especially South Africa. Aloe vera is well-known for its medical and cosmetic properties. Its fleshy, serrated leaves contain a gel that is used for skin care and healing.

10. Kalanchoe beharensis (Kalanchoe beharensis)

Madagascar: This succulent plant is recognised for its big, velvety leaves and unique appearance. It thrives in dry climates and is commonly found in Madagascar's desert regions.

11. Euphorbia candelabrum (Euphorbia candelabrum)

East Africa, encompassing Ethiopia and Kenya: This huge, tree-like succulent is distinguished by its branching, candelabra-like shape and thrives in arid, rocky areas.

12. Pterocarpus angolensis (Pterocarpus angolensis)

Southern Africa, encompassing Zimbabwe, Mozambique, and South Africa: Commonly known as the Marula tree, it produces edible fruits and is valued for its timber and medicinal benefits.

13. Strelitzia reginae (Bird of Paradise)

South Africa: This beautiful plant is recognised for its unusual blossoms, which resemble a bird's head. It is commonly used in landscaping and is native to South Africa's eastern regions.

14. Raphia taedigera (Raphia taedigera)

West Africa, which includes countries like Ghana and Côte d'Ivoire: This palm, known for its huge, feathery leaves, is used for a variety of uses, including thatching roofs and weaving mats.

15. Euphorbia milii (Crown of Thorns)

Spiny stems and brilliant red or yellow flowers characterise this plant, which grows in Madagascar and along the East African coastline. It is commonly grown as an ornamental plant and thrives in dry, rocky soils.

Australia & New Zealand

1. Wollemi Pine (Wollemia nobilis)

Wollemi National Park, New South Wales: An ancient conifer with prehistoric origins discovered in 1994. It has a unique, irregular branching structure and is one of the world's oldest trees, with some thought to be more than 200 million years old.

2. Banksia (Banksia integrifolia)

Region: Eastern coast of Australia: This plant, known for its distinctive flower spikes and leathery leaves, is vital for its nectar, which feeds a diverse range of Australian fauna.

3. Macadamia Nut (Macadamia integrifolia)

Eastern Australia produces edible nuts, which are highly valued commercially. The tree grows in subtropical and tropical climates, with huge, glossy leaves and white or pink blossoms.

4. Kangaroo Paw (Anigozanthos spp.)

Western Australia: This plant is known for its distinctive claw-shaped blossoms that resemble kangaroo paws and comes in a variety of colours, including red, yellow, and green.

5. Australian Waratah (Telopea speciosissima)

This stunning plant, which produces huge, red or pink flower heads, is a symbol of New South Wales. It is suitable to coastal heathland and woodlands.

6. Tea Tree (Melaleuca alternifolia)

New South Wales and Queensland are known for its oil, which has antibacterial characteristics. It has slender leaves and blooms in little white to pink flowers.

7. Eucalyptus (Eucalyptus spp.)

Australia-wide: There are over 700 species of eucalyptus in Australia. These trees are known for their distinctive bark, aromatic leaves, and essential oil.

8. Grevillea (Grevillea robusta)

Eastern Australia: Known as the Silk Oak, it has magnificent spidery blossoms in yellow, orange, and red. The tree has large, fern-like leaves.

9. Kauri Tree (Agathis australis)

North Island, New Zealand: The kauri is one of the world's largest and oldest trees, standing up to 66 meters tall with a gigantic trunk. It is vital to the forests of New Zealand.

10. Silver Tree (Leucadendron argenteum)

Cape Peninsula, South Africa: This plant, known for its silvery leaf, is suited to the Mediterranean environment of the Cape Peninsula. It is native to South Africa, not New Zealand.

11.Rimu Tree (Dacrydium cupressinum)

New Zealand: The Rimu is a conifer native to New Zealand, with reddish-brown bark and needle-like leaves. It is a key tree in New Zealand's temperate rainforests.

12. Totara Tree (Podocarpus totara)

New Zealand: Totara is a huge conifer with unusual leaf and bark that is well-known for its durability. It is an important species for New Zealand's forest ecosystems.

13. Kowhai (Sophora microphylla)

New Zealand: This tree is notable for its vivid yellow, pendulous flowers that bloom in the early spring. It is a natural plant found in a variety of forest and scrubland habitats.

14. New Zealand Flax (Phormium tenax)

New Zealand: It is known as "Harakeke" in Maori and has long, sword-like leaves. It has traditionally been utilised in textile production. It develops tall flower spikes that include red or green flowers.

15. Pohutukawa (Metrosideros excelsa)

North Island, New Zealand: Known as the New Zealand Christmas tree, this plant features vivid red, bottlebrush-like blossoms and is usually found near the coast.

Asia

East Asia

1. Japanese Maple (Acer palmatum)

Japan, Korea, and China: Known for its lovely, lobed leaves that change colour with the seasons. Japanese maple is popular in gardens and landscapes due to its ornamental appeal.

2. Sakura (Prunus serrulata)

Japan: Sakura, also known as cherry blossom, is a lovely pink flower that blooms in the spring. It holds cultural significance in Japan.

3. Gingko Tree (Ginkgo biloba)

China: This tree, sometimes known as the "living fossil," has distinctive fan-shaped leaves and is well-known for its tenacity and therapeutic capabilities.

4. Chinese Peony (Paeonia lactiflora)

China: This plant, famous for its enormous, fragrant blossoms in a variety of colours, has a long history in Chinese culture and medicine.

South Asia

1. Himalayan Blue Poppy (Meconopsis betonicifolia)

Region: Himalayas (Nepal, Bhutan, India): This plant has beautiful blue flowers and is adaptable to high-altitude habitats in the Himalayas.

2. Indian Lotus (Nelumbo nucifera)

India, Bangladesh: This aquatic plant is revered in Hindu and Buddhist cultures for its huge, fragrant blossoms and broad, circular leaves.

3. Assam Tea (Camellia sinensis var. assamica)

Assam, India: This type of tea plant is indigenous to the Assam region and is used to make Assam tea, which is famous for its strong flavour.

4. Ginger (Zingiber officinale)

India: Known for its rhizome used in cooking and medicine, ginger is native to tropical Asia and has a long history of use.

Southeast Asia

1. Rafflesia arnoldii

Indonesia (Sumatra and Borneo): Rafflesia is a parasitic plant that produces the world's largest single flower. It has a peculiar, foul-smelling bloom.

2. Himalayan Rhubarb (Rheum nobile)

Bhutan, Nepal, and India: This plant is known for its enormous, decorative leaves and magnificent flower spikes, which are adapted to high-altitude environments.

3. Bamboo (e.g., Phyllostachys edulis)

China: Moso bamboo is essential for construction, crafts, and as a food supply for gigantic pandas. It is rapidly growing and plays a key role in the local ecosystem.

4. Jasmine (Jasminum sambac)

Indonesia & Philippines: Jasmine, known for its fragrant white blooms, is a popular ingredient in traditional perfumes and ceremonies.

Central Asia

1. Tamarisk (Tamarix ramosissima) This shrub, found in Central Asia, including Kazakhstan and Uzbekistan, thrives in arid environments and produces small, pink or white blooms. It is typically found in saline and alkaline soils.

2. Saffron Crocus (Crocus sativus)

Region: Iran, Afghanistan, and Central Asia: Saffron, a precious spice obtained from the stigma of its blooms, is used in culinary and traditional medicine.

3. Nettle (Urtica dioica)

Central Asia: This plant is noted for its stinging hairs and is utilised in traditional medicine and as food in many cultures.

West Asia (Middle East)

1. Desert Rose (Adenium obesum)

Arabian Peninsula and areas of East Africa: This plant, known for its stunning trumpet-shaped flowers and swelling base, thrives in harsh desert conditions.

2. Juniper (Juniperus excelsa)

Turkey, Iran, and areas of the Middle East: This evergreen tree is harvested for its wood and berries, which are commonly used in cooking and traditional medicine.

2. Pomegranate (Punica granatum)

Iran, Turkey, and portions of the Middle East: Pomegranate is a culturally significant fruit used in cuisine and traditional medicine, distinguished by its ruby, jewel-like seeds.

Japan

1. Japanese Camellia (Camellia japonica)

Japan: This evergreen shrub, famed for its enormous, spectacular blossoms, is a popular ornamental plant in Japanese gardens.

2. Japanese Knotweed (Fallopia japonica)

Japan: Japanese Knotweed, an invasive species in many regions of the world, is well-known for its quick growth and resilience.

China

1. Chinese Lantern (Physalis alkekengi)

China: This plant is notable for its bright orange, lantern-like calyxes that envelop the fruit; it is also employed in traditional medicine and as a decorative plant.

2. Chinese Wisteria (Wisteria sinensis)

China: This plant, known for its cascading clusters of purple blossoms, is commonly utilised in gardens and traditional Chinese landscapes.

Western Europe

1. Edelweiss (Leontopodium alpinum)

Alps (Austria, Switzerland, France, and Italy): Edelweiss, known for its star-shaped, fluffy white blossoms, grows in high-altitude alpine regions and is a symbol of mountainous scenery.

2. Welsh Poppy (Meconopsis cambrica)

Wales, southwestern England: This plant, is native to Wales' temperate forests and grasslands, with beautiful yellow or orange flowers.

3. Knautia arvensis (Field Scabious)

The United Kingdom and Ireland: A wildflower with lovely, pincushion-like purple blossoms that grows in meadows and grasslands.

Central Europe

1. Alpine Aster (Aster alpinus)

Alps and Carpathians: This plant, known for its brilliant blue or purple blossoms, thrives in alpine meadows and rocky outcrops.

2. European Yew (Taxus baccata)

Europe-wide, including the United Kingdom and areas of Central Europe: This evergreen tree features dark green needles and crimson berries. It is known for its long life and application in traditional medicine and gardening.

3. Swiss Pine (Pinus cembra)

Alps (Switzerland, Austria, and Italy): Also known as the Swiss Stone Pine, this tree thrives in high-altitude conditions and is prized for its long-lasting wood and tasty seeds.

Southern Europe

1. Cretan Date Palm (Phoenix theophrasti)

Crete (Greece): This palm is an endangered species unique to Crete, notable for its unusual feathery leaves and little, sweet dates.

2. Spanish Bluebell (Hyacinthoides hispanica)

Spain: Crete (Greece): This palm is an endangered species native to Crete, known for its distinctive feathery leaves and little, sweet dates.

3. Sardinian Cypress (Cupressus sempervirens var. sarda)

Sardinia (Italy): It is a tall, slender type of Mediterranean Cypress that is commonly employed in traditional Sardinian settings.

Northern Europe

1. Dwarf Cornel (Cornus canadensis)

Northern Scandinavia, including Norway and Sweden: This creeping shrub bears little white blooms and crimson berries. It grows in the cold, acidic soils of the northern taiga and tundra.

2. Lapland Rosebay (Rhododendron lapponicum)

Lapland (Northern Scandinavia): This small shrub, known for its bright pink blossoms, thrives in harsh, acidic soils and can be found in tundra and boreal woodlands.

3. Norwegian Bluebell (Campanula rotundifolia)

Norway & Sweden: This plant has beautiful, bell-shaped blue flowers and is usually found in alpine meadows and rocky outcrops.

Eastern Europe

1. Pannonian Iris (Iris pumila)

Pannonian Plain (Hungary, Austria, and Slovakia): A small perennial iris with purple or blue flowers that thrives in the Pannonian Plain's dry, sandy soils.

2. Roman Chamomile (Chamaemelum nobile)

Eastern Europe, including portions of Italy and Greece: Roman Chamomile, known for its fragrance, and daisy-like blossoms, is a traditional herbal remedy with a long history in Europe.

3. Bulgarian Snowdrop (Galanthus nivalis var. bulgaricus)

Bulgaria: A delicate white variant of the common snowdrop that blooms in early spring and is native to Bulgaria's hilly regions.

Mediterranean Region

1.Cistus (Cistus ladanifer)

Mediterranean Basin (Spain, Portugal, and France): This shrub, known for its enormous white or pink flowers and aromatic resin, thrives in the Mediterranean's dry, rocky soils.

2. Mediterranean Heather (Erica multiflora)

Mediterranean Basin (Spain, Portugal, and Italy): A tiny shrub with pink or purple flowers that flourishes in the Mediterranean's heathlands and open woodlands.

Cyprus Cedar (Cedrus brevifolia)

Cyprus: This cedar is native to Cyprus and is recognized for its characteristic, compact growth. It is utilized in traditional Cypriot woodworking.

2.4 SUMMARY

Biodiversity is critical for preserving ecological balance, supplying resources such as food and medicine, and facilitating ecosystem functions such as pollination, water purification, and climate regulation. The loss of biodiversity can cause environmental instability, decreased resilience, and fewer resources for humans. Conservation initiatives seek to maintain and sustain biodiversity to ensure a healthy and functional planet.

Endemic animals are species that can only be found in one geographic region and nowhere else on the planet. Their distinct evolutionary histories and specialized adaptations render them more vulnerable to habitat changes and environmental challenges. Endemic animals are frequently used as markers of environmental health and are critical for biodiversity conservation. Protecting their habitats is critical for their existence and the ecological balance of their respective locations.

Endemic plants are those that are endemic to and found only in a certain geographic location. These plants have evolved to the particular conditions of their environments and frequently perform specialized ecological functions. Endemic plants are critical for preserving ecological balance and sustaining the ecosystems in which they grow. Conservation activities are critical for protecting these plants from challenges like habitat degradation and climate change.

2.5 GLOSSARY

Species Diversity: The number and variety of species within a given area. This includes not only the total number of species but also their relative abundance and distribution.

Genetic Diversity: The variation in genetic material within a species or population. It is important for a species' ability to adapt to changing environments and survive disease outbreaks.

Ecosystem Diversity: The variety of ecosystems in a given area, including different types of habitats, communities, and ecological processes. It encompasses the interactions between living organisms and their physical environment.

Functional Diversity: The range of different biological functions or roles that species perform within an ecosystem. This includes processes such as pollination, nutrient cycling, and predator-prey relationships.

Regional Endemism: Species that are native to a specific region, such as a particular country or a group of countries. For example, the Greek Wild Goat is endemic to Greece.

Local Endemism: Species that are restricted to a very small area, such as a single mountain range or island. For example, the Wollemi Pine is endemic to a small area in Wollemi National Park in Australia.

Island Endemism: Species that are found only on a specific island or group of islands. For example, the Hawaiian Silvers word is endemic to the Hawaiian Islands.

Habitat Endemism: Species that are restricted to a particular type of habitat or ecological niche. For example, certain alpine plants may be endemic to high-altitude mountain regions.

Native Species: Species that occur naturally in a specific region or ecosystem without human intervention.

Alien Species (Non-native Species): Species that are introduced to an area outside their natural range, either intentionally or accidentally.

Extinction Risk: The likelihood of a species becoming extinct. Endemic species are often at higher risk due to their restricted ranges and specialized habitat needs.

2.6 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. Which of the following best defines biodiversity?

A) The number of individuals of a single species in an area

B) The variety and variability of life on Earth, including species, genetic, and ecosystem diversity

C) The total biomass of organisms in a particular area

D) The extent of agricultural practices in a given region

Answer: B

2. Which component of biodiversity refers to the variety of different species within a given area?

A) Genetic diversity

- B) Ecosystem diversity
- C) Functional diversity
- D) Species diversity

Answer: D

3. What does genetic diversity refer to?

- A) The variety of different ecosystems in a region
- B) The range of different biological functions within an ecosystem

C) The variation in genetic material within and between populations of a species

D) The number of species in a particular area

Answer: C

4. Which of the following is not a benefit provided by biodiversity?

- A) Climate regulation
- B) Food production
- C) Increased vulnerability to diseases
- D) Pollination of crops

Answer: C

5. Functional diversity refers to:

A) The variety of habitats within an ecosystem

- B) The different biological functions or roles that species perform within an ecosystem
- C) The number of different species in an area
- D) The genetic differences within a species

Answer: B

6. What does endemism refer to?

- A) The introduction of a species to a new geographic area
- B) A species that is native to and restricted to a specific geographic area
- C) The process of species becoming extinct in a particular region

D) The migration of species between different continents

Answer: B

7. Which of the following is an example of regional endemism?

A) The Komodo dragon is found only on the Indonesian islands of Komodo, Rinca, Flores, and Gili Motang

B) The Galápagos Tortoise found only on the Galápagos Islands

C) The European Bluebell found across Europe

D) The Hawaiian Silversword found only in Hawaii

Answer: C

8. Which type of endemism is characterized by a species restricted to a very small area, such as a single island or mountain range?

A) Regional endemism

B) Local endemism

C) Island endemism

D) Habitat endemism

Answer: B

9. What is a potential risk factor for endemic species?

- A) Large population sizes
- B) Wide geographic distribution
- C) Specialized habitat requirements and limited distribution

D) High genetic diversity

Answer: C

10. Which of the following is an example of island endemism?

- A) The Japanese maple found in Japan, Korea, and China
- B) The Galápagos Tortoise found only on the Galápagos Islands
- C) The Himalayan Blue Poppy found in the Himalayas
- D) The Mediterranean Heather found throughout the Mediterranean Basin

Answer: B

2.7 REFERENCES

- Kaushik A. and Kaushik C.P. (2008). Environmental Studies: New Age International Publishers, New Delhi.
- Nair S.M. (1992). Endangered Animals of India and Their Conservation. National Book Trust, New Delhi. Odum E.P. (1971). Fundamentals of Ecology. W.B. Saunders Company, Japan, 3rd edition.
- Prakash S. and Verma A.K. (2015). Studies on different fish genera in Alwara Lake of Kaushambi. Bioherald: An International Journal of Biodiversity & Environment. 5(1-2):60-62 pp.
- Prakash S. and Verma A.K. (2016b). Conservation Status of freshwater fishes reported in Alwara Lake of District Kaushambi (U.P.). International Journal of Zoology Studies 1(5):32-35 pp.
- Subba Rao S. (2001). Ethics of Ecology and Environment. Rajat Publications, New Delhi.
- Verma A.K. and Prakash S. (2016a). Fish biodiversity of Alwara lake of District Kaushambi, Uttar Pradesh, India. Research Journal of Animal, Veterinary and Fishery Sciences 4(4): 5-9 pp.

- Kaushik A. and Kaushik C.P. (2008). Environmental Studies: New Age International Publishers, New Delhi.
- Nair S.M. (1992). Endangered Animals of India and Their Conservation. National Book Trust, New Delhi.
- Odum E.P. (1971). Fundamentals of Ecology. W.B. Saunders Company, Japan, 3rd edition.
- Prakash S. and Verma A.K. (2015). Studies on different fish genera in Alwara Lake of Kaushambi.
- Bioherald: An International Journal of Biodiversity & Environment. 5(1-2):60-62 pp.
- Subba Rao S. (2001). Ethics of Ecology and Environment. Rajat Publications, New Delhi.

2.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

(A) Long Question

- 1. Discuss the significance of biodiversity at different levels (species, genetic, and ecosystem diversity) and explain how changes in one level can impact the others.
- 2. Analyze the role of biodiversity in ecosystem services and provide examples of how the loss of biodiversity can impact these services.
- 3. Examine the factors that contribute to the development of endemic species in isolated environments such as islands or mountain ranges.
- 4. Describe the conservation challenges faced by endemic species and propose strategies to address these challenges.

(B) Short Question

- 1. What are the three main components of biodiversity?
- 2. Why is genetic diversity important for the survival of a species?

- 3. How does ecosystem diversity contribute to the health of the planet?
- 4. What role do keystone species play in an ecosystem?
- 5. What is meant by "functional diversity" in the context of ecosystems?
- 6. What does it mean for a species to be endemic?
- 7. Give an example of a plant species that exhibits island endemism.
- 8. How can habitat loss affect endemic species?
- 9. What is the difference between regional and local endemism?
- 10. Why are endemic species often more vulnerable to extinction?

UNIT 3: ECOLOGICAL BIOGEOGRAPHY, ENVIRONMENTAL GRADIENTS AND SPECIES DISTRIBUTIONS

3.1 OBJECTIVES

3.2 INTRODUCTION

3.3 ECOLOGICAL, BIOGEOGRAPHY, ENVIRONMENTAL GRADIENTS AND SPECIES DISTRIBUTIONS

3.4 SUMMARY

3.5 GLOSSARY

3.6 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

3.7 REFERENCES

3.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

3.1 OBJECTIVES

- Understand the fundamental concepts of ecological biogeography and how it integrates principles from ecology and biogeography to study species distributions.
- Identify and describe different types of environmental gradients, including temperature, precipitation, and altitude, and explain how these gradients influence species distributions.
- Analyze the impact of abiotic factors such as climate and soil on the geographical distribution of species.
- Evaluate the role of biotic interactions, including competition, predation, and mutualism, in shaping species distributions.
- Explain how environmental gradients create diverse habitats, each supporting different communities of organisms.
- Predict how species distributions might change in response to future environmental changes, such as climate change and habitat fragmentation.

3.2 INTRODUCTION

This unit is designed to provide you with a comprehensive understanding of how ecological processes and environmental factors influence the geographical distribution of species. The field of ecological biogeography bridges the gap between ecology and biogeography, integrating principles from both disciplines to explore the patterns and mechanisms that shape biodiversity across different spatial and temporal scales.

The study of ecological biogeography is crucial for several reasons. It helps us understand why species are distributed the way they are, which can reveal much about the history of life on Earth, the dynamics of ecosystems, and the interactions between organisms and their environments. This knowledge is essential for addressing pressing environmental issues such as habitat loss, climate change, and the spread of invasive species. By studying how species distributions have changed over time and how they are influenced by environmental gradients, we can make more informed decisions about conservation and management strategies to preserve biodiversity and ecosystem health.

Environmental gradients, such as those involving temperature, precipitation, and altitude, play a significant role in determining the distribution of species. These gradients create a range of habitats with varying conditions, each supporting different communities of organisms. Understanding how species respond to these gradients is key to predicting how they might respond to future environmental changes, such as global warming or habitat fragmentation.

Species distributions are not solely determined by abiotic factors like climate and soil. Biotic interactions, including competition, predation, and mutualism, also significantly influence where species are found. These interactions can shape community structures, drive evolutionary changes, and affect ecosystem functioning. Thus, a thorough study of species distributions must consider both the physical environment and the biological interactions within it.

In this unit, you will explore the fundamental concepts of ecological biogeography, learn about different types of environmental gradients, and examine how these gradients influence species distributions. You will also study various methods used to investigate species distributions and understand the practical applications of this knowledge in conservation planning and environmental management. By the end of this unit, you should have a solid grasp of the principles of ecological biogeography and be well-equipped to apply this knowledge to real-world environmental and conservation challenges.

3.3 ECOLOGICAL BIOGEOGRAPHY, ENVIRONMENTAL GRADIENTS AND SPECIES DISTRIBUTIONS

Biogeography is divided into three main fields: historical, ecological, and conservation biogeography. Each field examines species distribution from a unique angle. Historical biogeography focuses on the evolutionary distribution of animals, studying phylogenetic patterns over time. Ecological biogeography investigates the factors influencing the global distribution of plants and animals, such as climate, habitat, and primary productivity (the rate at which plants produce net chemical energy in an ecosystem). Unlike historical biogeography, which looks at long-term evolutionary changes, ecological biogeography deals with short-term distribution patterns. Conservation biogeography aims to manage current biodiversity levels by providing data and concerns to policymakers regarding conservation biology.

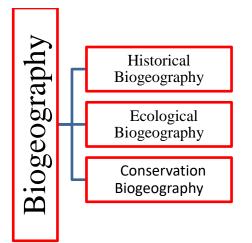


Fig 3.1: Biogeography Branches

In this unit, we will discuss only Ecological Biogeography. Ecological Biogeography is a very vast topic, so we will break the ecological biogeography into ecology and biogeography, and then we will understand the ecological biogeography.

Ecology: Ecology is the study of the interactions among organisms and their environment. It focuses on the relationships between living organisms, including humans, and their physical surroundings. Key concepts in ecology include:

- a. Ecosystems: Communities of living organisms interacting with their physical environment.
- b. Habitat: The natural environment where an organism lives.
- c. Niche: The role and position a species has in its environment, including all its interactions with biotic and abiotic factors.
- d. Food Webs: Complex networks of feeding relationships in an ecosystem.
- e. Population Dynamics: The study of how populations of species change over time and space.
- f. Biodiversity: The variety of life in a particular habitat or ecosystem.

Biogeography: Biogeography is the study of the distribution of species and ecosystems in geographic space and through geological time. It seeks to understand the patterns of biodiversity and the processes that result in these patterns. Key concepts in biogeography include:

- a. Species Distribution: The areas where species are found.
- b. Endemism: Species that are native to a specific location and found nowhere else.
- c. Dispersal: The movement of organisms from one place to another.

- d. Vicariance: The geographical separation of a population, typically by a physical barrier, leading to speciation.
- e. Island Biogeography: Study of the species composition and species richness on islands, which helps in understanding factors like isolation and area.
- f. Historical Biogeography: The study of the historical factors that have shaped current distributions, including plate tectonics, glaciation, and sea-level changes.

Now we will study the ecological biogeography:

Ecological Biogeography

Combining ecology and biogeography fields, ecological biogeography focuses on how ecological processes (interactions between organisms and their environment) influence the geographical distribution of species. It examines both contemporary factors and historical events that shape the patterns of biodiversity. Here are some key points in ecological biogeography:

- a. Ecological Niches and Distribution: Understanding how the niche of a species (its role and position in the environment) affects where it can live and thrive.
- b. Environmental Gradients: Studying how changes in environmental factors (like temperature, humidity, and altitude) across a landscape affect species distribution.
- c. Species Interactions: Exploring how interactions such as competition, predation, and mutualism influence the spatial patterns of species.
- d. Habitat Fragmentation: Investigating how the breaking up of habitats into smaller, isolated patches affects biodiversity.
- e. Climate Change: Assessing how changes in climate impact the distribution of species and ecosystems.
- f. Conservation Biogeography: Applying principles of biogeography to the conservation of species and habitats, including the design of protected areas and corridors.

Scope of Ecological Biogeography

1. Species Distribution: Investigating the geographic distribution of species, understanding patterns such as endemic, cosmopolitan, and disjunct distributions.

2. Habitat and Niche: Exploring specific habitats and ecological niches, examining the adaptations that enable species to survive and thrive in particular environments.

3. Community Ecology: Analyzing interactions within biological communities, such as competition, predation, and symbiosis, and their effects on community structure and species composition.

4. Biogeographical Regions: Identifying and characterizing regions based on the distribution of flora and fauna, such as ecozones, biomes, and ecoregions.

5. Island Biogeography: Studying island ecosystems to understand species colonization, extinction, and the effects of isolation and area on biodiversity.

6. Historical Biogeography: Examining the influence of historical events (e.g., plate tectonics, glaciations) on the current distribution of species.

7. Conservation Biogeography: Applying biogeographical principles to conservation, identifying biodiversity hotspots, understanding habitat fragmentation, and designing protected areas.

8. Climate Change: Assessing how climate change affects species distributions, including range shifts, phenological changes, and potential extinctions.

9. Evolutionary Biogeography: Investigating evolutionary processes (e.g., speciation, dispersal) that shape biodiversity patterns.

10. Spatial Analysis and Modelling: Using GIS, remote sensing, and spatial modelling to map and predict species distributions and ecological patterns.

11. Human Impact: Evaluating the effects of human activities (e.g., urbanization, deforestation) on ecosystems and species distributions.

Concept of Ecological Biogeography

Ecological biogeography is grounded in several key concepts:

- a. Species-Area Relationship: The relationship between the area of a habitat and the number of species it can support, often expressed as larger areas supporting more species.
- b. Niche Theory: The concept that each species occupies a specific niche, defined by its role in the ecosystem and its adaptations to environmental conditions.

- c. Endemism: The occurrence of species that are native to a particular region and found nowhere else, highlighting unique biodiversity patterns.
- d. Dispersal and Colonization: The movement of species from one location to another and their ability to establish populations in new areas.
- e. Extinction and Speciation: Processes that influence the diversity of life, with extinction reducing and speciation increasing the number of species over time.
- f. Ecological Succession: The process by which ecosystems change and develop over time, influencing species distributions and community structures.
- g. Biotic and Abiotic Factors: The interplay between living organisms (biotic factors) and non-living environmental components (abiotic factors) in shaping ecological patterns.
- h. Ecological Gradients: Variations in environmental conditions (e.g., temperature, precipitation) across geographic spaces that influence species distributions.
- i. Climate and Weather Patterns: The impact of long-term climate and short-term weather on the distribution and behaviour of species.
- j. Landscape Ecology: The study of spatial patterns and their effects on ecological processes, focusing on the arrangement of ecosystems across large areas.

By integrating these concepts, ecological biogeography provides a comprehensive framework for understanding the complex relationships between organisms and their environments, the factors driving biodiversity, and the implications for conservation and ecological management.

Environmental Gradients and Species Distribution

The relationship between environmental gradients and species distribution is a foundational concept in ecology, biogeography, and evolutionary biology. Environmental gradients are spatial variations in environmental conditions such as temperature, moisture, light, and nutrient availability. These gradients profoundly influence the distribution, abundance, and diversity of species across ecosystems. Understanding these gradients helps explain why certain species are found in specific habitats and how they adapt or respond to changes in environmental conditions.

What are Environmental Gradients?

Environmental gradients represent changes in abiotic (non-living) factors over a spatial or temporal scale. These gradients can be continuous or patchy, gradual or abrupt, depending on the specific factors involved. Some common types of environmental gradients include:

- a. Temperature gradients: Variation in temperature from one place to another, such as altitude-related temperature drops in mountainous regions or latitudinal differences from the equator to the poles.
- b. Moisture gradients: These involve changes in the amount of available water, such as from a wetland to a desert or from lowland floodplains to upland ridges.
- c. Light gradients: Variations in light intensity, often seen in forested areas where light decreases from canopy to understory.
- d. Nutrient gradients: Shifts in soil or water nutrient content, which can vary across different landscapes, such as from nutrient-poor sandy soils to nutrient-rich loams.

Species Distribution Patterns Along Environmental Gradients

Species distribution is heavily influenced by the organisms' ability to tolerate or adapt to the changing conditions of an environmental gradient. The presence, abundance, and performance of a species across a gradient can form distinctive distribution patterns. These patterns often reflect the optimal environmental conditions for the species and the limits of its tolerance. Here are some key patterns.

a. Niche differentiation: Different species occupy specific niches along an environmental gradient, each adapted to a particular range of conditions. This differentiation reduces competition and allows for the coexistence of multiple species. For example, plants in a forest may be adapted to thrive at different levels of moisture or light.

b. Species abundance curve: Along a gradient, species often exhibit a bell-shaped distribution pattern, where they reach maximum abundance at a certain point of the gradient, their optimal zone, and decline as the environment becomes less favourable.

c. Species richness: Richness can vary along environmental gradients. For example, species richness tends to increase with decreasing latitude, leading to higher biodiversity in tropical regions than in polar regions. Richness may also be higher at intermediate points of some gradients (e.g., moisture), where conditions are neither too extreme nor too moderate.

d. Zonation: Clear zonation can occur where species distribution changes in discrete steps, such as in altitudinal gradients in mountains, where different vegetation types or species dominate at specific elevations.

Mechanisms Driving Species Distribution Along Gradients

Several ecological and evolutionary mechanisms determine how species distribute themselves along environmental gradients:

a. Physiological tolerance: Species possess specific physiological limits for factors like temperature, moisture, and nutrient availability. These limits, also known as a species' fundamental niche, determine where they can survive. For instance, some plant species are drought-tolerant, while others need consistent moisture.

b. Dispersal ability: A species' capacity to disperse across space influences how it colonizes various habitats along an environmental gradient. Barriers like mountains, rivers, or human-made structures can limit dispersal and create distinct species distributions.

c. Competition and interactions: Interspecific competition, predation, and mutualisms can shape how species are distributed along environmental gradients. For example, some species may be excluded from otherwise suitable habitats due to competition with other species.

d. Adaptation and evolution: Over long periods, species may adapt to environmental gradients through natural selection, resulting in populations that are fine-tuned to specific conditions. Speciation can occur if populations become isolated along a gradient and evolve to exploit different environmental niches.

Case Studies of Environmental Gradients

Several ecological studies illustrate how species respond to environmental gradients:

a. Mountains and altitudinal gradients: Mountains provide one of the most striking examples of environmental gradients. With increasing altitude, temperature drops, air pressure changes, and moisture patterns shift, creating distinct life zones. For instance, in tropical mountains, there may be rainforests at lower altitudes, cloud forests higher up, and alpine tundra at the highest elevations.

- b. Latitudinal gradients: One of the most well-known patterns of species distribution is the latitudinal gradient in biodiversity. Tropical regions near the equator have high species richness, while polar regions have fewer species. This gradient is driven by factors like stable climate, productivity, and evolutionary time.
- c. Water salinity gradients in estuaries: Estuaries, where freshwater mixes with saltwater, exhibit strong salinity gradients that influence the distribution of aquatic organisms. Some species, like certain fish or crabs, are euryhaline and can tolerate a wide range of salinities, while others are stenohaline and restricted to either freshwater or marine environments.

Climate Change and Species Distribution Shifts

Climate change is causing significant shifts in environmental gradients, altering species distributions. Temperature and moisture patterns are shifting globally, leading to species migrations and range expansions. For example:

Poleward migrations: Many species, particularly in temperate zones, are shifting their ranges toward the poles as average temperatures rise. This is seen in numerous bird species, which have expanded their breeding ranges northward in response to warming conditions.

Altitudinal shifts: As temperatures increase, species in mountainous areas are moving to higher elevations to remain within their preferred temperature range. However, this creates challenges for species that are already near the tops of mountains, as they have no further habitat to move into.

Habitat fragmentation and barriers: Climate change-induced habitat changes, coupled with human development, can fragment habitats and block species' ability to migrate along gradients, increasing extinction risk for many organisms.

Applications of Understanding Environmental Gradients

Conservation planning: Knowledge of species distribution along environmental gradients helps in designing protected areas and predicting how species might respond to environmental changes. For example, establishing conservation corridors along altitudinal gradients allows species to migrate in response to climate change.

Predictive modelling: Ecologists and conservationists use species distribution models (SDMs) to predict how species will respond to changes in environmental gradients. These models incorporate data on species occurrences and environmental variables to forecast future distributions under different climate scenarios.

Ecological restoration: Restoration projects can be guided by knowledge of how species respond to environmental gradients, ensuring that plantings or species introductions align with the specific conditions of the area being restored.

Environmental gradients play a critical role in shaping species distributions. From altitudinal shifts to latitudinal diversity patterns, these gradients highlight the complex interactions between organisms and their environments. As global changes continue to reshape these gradients, understanding their dynamics will be essential for biodiversity conservation and ecosystem management.

Environmental gradients are continuous changes in environmental conditions over a geographic area. These gradients influence the distribution, behaviour, and interactions of organisms. Understanding environmental gradients is crucial in ecological biogeography because they help explain why certain species are found in specific locations and how communities are structured. Here are key aspects of environmental gradients:

3.4 SUMMARY

Ecological biogeography examines the distribution of species and ecosystems across geographical spaces, focusing on how ecological processes shape these patterns. Environmental gradients, such as temperature, moisture, and light, are critical in determining species distributions. As environmental factors change along gradients, species exhibit varied adaptations, tolerances, and distribution patterns based on their ecological niches. Species abundance often peaks at optimal points along a gradient, while extreme conditions limit their presence. Interactions like competition, predation, and mutualism, as well as evolutionary adaptations, further influence species' ability to inhabit specific environments. Climate change is now altering these gradients, leading to shifts in species ranges, highlighting the importance of understanding ecological biogeography in conservation efforts and predicting future biodiversity changes.

3.5 GLOSSARY

Ecology: Ecology is the study of the interactions among organisms and their environment. It focuses on the relationships between living organisms, including humans, and their physical surroundings.

Habitat: The natural environment where an organism lives.

Biogeography: Biogeography is the study of how and why species and ecosystems are distributed across different geographical areas.

Environmental gradients: Environmental gradients represent changes in abiotic (non-living) factors over a spatial or temporal scale. These gradients can be continuous or patchy, gradual or abrupt, depending on the specific factors involved.

Endemism: The occurrence of species that are native to a particular region and found nowhere else, highlighting unique biodiversity patterns.

Vicariance: The geographical separation of a population, typically by a physical barrier, leading to speciation.

3.6 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

- 1. Do you know that Species that are native to a specific location and found nowhere else are known as Endemism?
- 2. Do you know that Environmental gradients represent changes in abiotic (non-living) factors over a spatial or temporal scale? These gradients can be continuous or patchy, gradual or abrupt, depending on the specific factors involved.

3.7 REFERENCES

- MacArthur, R.H., & Wilson, E.O. (1967). The Theory of Island Biogeography. Princeton University Press.
- Lomolino, M.V., Riddle, B.R., & Brown, J.H. (2010). Biogeography. Sinauer Associates.

- Whittaker, R.J., & Fernandez-Palacios, J.M. (2007). Island Biogeography: Ecology, Evolution, and Conservation. Oxford University Press.
- Gaston, K.J. (2000). Global Patterns in Biodiversity. Nature, 405, 220-227.
- <u>https://geography.name/ecological-biogeography/#google_vignette</u>.
- <u>https://biologydictionary.net/biogeography/</u>
- <u>https://www.olx.in/en-in/nf/chat/user/551839141/1777774284</u>
- https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Environmental_gradient#:~:text=An%20environmental%20 gradient%2C%20or%20climate,temperature%2C%20soil%20humidity%20and%20precip itation.

3.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

Long Question

- 1. Write the definition of ecological biogeography. Explain the concept and scope of Ecological Biogeography.
- 2. What do you mean by Environmental gradients and species distributions?

Short Question

- 1. What do you mean by ecological biogeography?
- 2. Write the scope of ecological biogeography.
- 3. Write a short paragraph on environmental gradients.
- 4. Write in 200 words about the relationship between environmental gradients and species distribution.

Multiple Choice Question

- 1. What does ecological biogeography primarily focus on?
- A) The historical distribution of species
- B) The influence of ecological processes on species distribution
- C) The genetic makeup of organisms
- D) The classification of species

2. Which environmental factor is NOT typically considered an environmental gradient?

- A) Temperature
- B) Moisture
- C) Altitude
- D) Genetic variation
- 3. What is the main focus of ecological biogeography as compared to historical biogeography?
- A) Long-term evolutionary changes
- B) Short-term ecological factors affecting species distribution
- C) Speciation over geological time
- D) The fossil record
- 4. Which of the following is NOT a key concept in ecology?
- A) Ecosystems
- B) Habitat
- C) Dispersal
- D) Food webs

5. What is the term for species that are native to a specific location and found nowhere else?

- A) Cosmopolitan
- B) Endemic
- C) Exotic
- D) Invasive
- 6. What is the primary factor influencing species distribution along environmental gradients?
- A) Random genetic mutations
- B) Physiological tolerance to environmental conditions
- C) Human activities
- D) Population size
- 7. In which area would you expect higher species richness?
- A) Polar regions
- B) Tropical regions

- C) Desert ecosystems
- D) High-altitude tundra

8. What role do biotic interactions, like competition and predation, play in species distribution?

- A) They have no significant effect
- B) They shape community structures and spatial patterns
- C) They only affect species at the top of the food chain
- D) They limit species to their fundamental niche
- 9. Which of the following best defines the term "ecological niche"?
- A) The place a species inhabits
- B) The role and position a species has in its environment
- C) A species' genetic structure
- D) A species' evolutionary history
- 10. What is not a method used to investigate species distribution patterns?
- A) Fossil analysis
- B) GIS and remote sensing
- C) Species distribution models (SDMs)
- D) Genetic sequencing

11. What is the term used to describe the geographical separation of a population by a physical barrier, often leading to speciation?

- A) Dispersal
- B) Vicariance
- C) Endemism
- D) Colonization
- 12. What is the primary driver of poleward migrations of species?
- A) Competition with invasive species
- B) Habitat fragmentation
- C) Climate change and rising temperatures
- D) Evolutionary adaptations

- 13. What does the species-area relationship suggest?
- A) Larger areas support fewer species
- B) Larger areas support more species
- C) Species richness decreases with habitat size
- D) Area size does not affect species richness
- 14. How do mountains provide examples of environmental gradients?
- A) They have stable climate conditions at all altitudes
- B) They display gradual shifts in temperature and moisture with increasing altitude
- C) Species are uniformly distributed at all altitudes
- D) Environmental gradients do not exist in mountains
- 15. Which of the following is an effect of climate change on species distribution?
- A) Species are moving to lower altitudes
- B) Species ranges are shrinking globally
- C) Species are shifting their ranges poleward and to higher altitudes
- D) Species are unaffected by climate change

Answer) 1. B, 2. D, 3. B, 4. C, 5. B, 6. B, 7. B, 8. B, 9. B, 10. A, 11. B, 12. C, 13. B, 14. B, 15. C

UNIT 4: ISLAND BIOGEOGRAPHY THEORY, ECOLOGICAL NICHE MODELLING

4.1 OBJECTIVES

4.2 INTRODUCTION

4.3 ISLAND BIOGEOGRAPHY THEORY, ECOLOGICAL NICHE MODELLING

4.4 SUMMARY

4.5 GLOSSARY

4.6 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

4.7 REFERENCES

4.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

4.1 OBJECTIVES

- Understand the fundamental principles of Island Biogeography Theory, including species richness, immigration, and extinction rates.
- Analyze how island size and distance from the mainland influence biodiversity and species distribution.
- Explore the role of habitat diversity and resource availability in shaping island ecosystems.
- Examine the processes of colonization, speciation, and extinction in island environments.
- Utilize Ecological Niche Modelling to predict species distributions based on environmental variables.

4.2 INTRODUCTION

Island Biogeography Theory and Ecological Niche Modelling are two pivotal concepts in ecology that provide profound insights into species distribution, biodiversity, and conservation strategies. Understanding these concepts is crucial for addressing contemporary ecological challenges, such as habitat loss, climate change, and species conservation.

4.3 ISLAND BIOGEOGRAPHY THEORY ECOLOGICAL NICHE MODELLING

Historical background

The historical background of island biogeography traces back to the mid-20th century, with pivotal contributions by ecologists Robert MacArthur and E.O. Wilson. Their seminal work, "The Theory of Island Biogeography," published in 1967, revolutionized the understanding of species distribution on islands. Drawing on observations from natural island systems and empirical data, MacArthur and Wilson formulated a theoretical framework that explained the balance between immigration and extinction rates in determining species richness. This theory was influenced by earlier studies of island flora and fauna by naturalists like Charles Darwin and Alfred Russel Wallace, whose observations in the Galápagos and Malay Archipelago respectively highlighted the unique biogeographic patterns of islands. The development of island biogeography theory marked a significant advancement in ecology,

providing a robust model for studying biodiversity, species interactions, and the effects of habitat fragmentation.

Principles of Island biogeography

Island Biogeography Theory is built on several key principles that explain how species richness on islands is determined and maintained. Here are the main principles:

1.Species-Area Relationship:

- Larger Islands Support More Species: Larger islands provide more resources, diverse habitats, and space, which can support more species. The species-area relationship is often expressed mathematically, showing that species richness increases with island area but at a decreasing rate.
- Species Richness Increases with Area: The relationship typically follows a logarithmic or power law pattern, indicating that doubling the island's area results in a less than doubling of species number.

2. Species-Isolation Relationship:

- Isolation Affects Species Number: The distance of an island from the mainland or other source areas impacts the number of species it can support. Islands closer to the mainland have higher immigration rates, leading to greater species richness.
- Isolation Reduces Immigration: The farther an island is from potential source areas, the fewer species arrive, decreasing species richness over time.

3. Dynamic Equilibrium Model:

- Balance Between Immigration and Extinction: The number of species on an island is determined by a dynamic equilibrium between the rates of immigration (arrival of new species) and extinction (loss of existing species). This balance results in a relatively stable number of species, though the composition of species may change over time.
- Species Turnover: While the number of species may remain constant, the identity of species can change due to ongoing immigration and extinction events.

4. Immigration and Extinction Curves:

- Immigration Rate Declines with Increasing Species Number: As more species colonize an island, the probability that arriving species are new to the island decreases, leading to a declining immigration rate.
- Extinction Rate Increases with Species Number: With more species on the island, competition for limited resources intensifies, increasing the extinction rate.

5. Influence of Island Size and Isolation:

- Small, Isolated Islands: Typically have low species richness due to high extinction rates and low immigration rates.
- Large, Isolated Islands: May have moderate species richness as their size supports more species, but isolation limits immigration.
- Small, Near Islands: Can have moderate species richness because of high immigration rates despite higher extinction rates.
- Large, Near Islands: Tend to have high species richness due to both high immigration and lower extinction rates.

6. Rescue Effect:

Reduced Extinction Rates on Near Islands: Islands closer to the mainland may experience a "rescue effect," where frequent immigration helps replenish declining populations, thus reducing extinction rates.

7. Target Area Effect:

Larger Islands Attract More Immigrants: Larger islands present a bigger "target" for dispersing organisms, potentially increasing immigration rates compared to smaller islands.

These principles collectively provide a framework for understanding the patterns of species diversity on islands and isolated habitats, guiding research and conservation efforts.

Theory of Island biogeography Influencing factors

The Theory of Island Biogeography is determined by two factors:

1. The first is the effect of distance from the mainland. The mainland is where new immigrant species originally inhabited.

2. The second is the effect of island size.

These two factors establish how many species an island can hold at equilibrium. The equilibrium species number is the species richness of an island at which immigration balances extinction and which remains roughly constant.

Influencing factors

- 1. Degree of isolation (distance to nearest neighbour, and mainland).
- 2. Length of isolation (time)
- 3. Size of island (larger area usually facilitates greater diversity)
- 4. The habitat suitability which includes:
 - Climate (tropical versus arctic, humid versus arid, etc.)
 - Initial plant and animal composition if previously attached to a larger land mass (e.g. marsupials, primates)
 - The current species composition
- 5. Location relative to ocean currents (influences nutrient, fish, bird, and seed flow patterns).
- 6. Serendipity (the impacts of chance arrivals)

Ecological Niche Modelling (ENM)

In geography, a "niche" refers to the specific environmental conditions and resources that a species needs to survive, grow, and reproduce. This concept encompasses various factors, such as climate, food availability, habitat type, and interactions with other organisms. The niche of a species includes its role in the ecosystem, how it obtains its energy and nutrients, and how it responds to environmental variables. The niche concept helps in understanding biodiversity, species distribution, and ecological dynamics.

A niche is a subset of a habitat where only a particular species lives. No two species can live in the same ecological niche for a long time. A niche involves everything related to particular species such as how it eats and interacts with other organisms in an ecosystem.

Ecological Niche: An ecological niche refers to the role and position a species has in its environment. It encompasses how an organism interacts with both biotic (living) and abiotic (non-living) factors, including its habitat, food sources, and activities..

Fig 4.1: An example of an ecological niche is the flightless dung beetle. This insect exploits animal feces as a food source within its ecological niche.,



Source: Google

Ecological Niche Modelling (ENM), also known as Species Distribution Modelling (SDM), is a method used to predict the distribution of species across geographic spaces and through time based on environmental conditions and species occurrence data. This process involves several steps and incorporates a variety of data types and analytical techniques.

Ecological Niche Modelling (ENM) also known as, Species distribution modelling (SDM), environmental niche modelling (ENM), habitat modelling, predictive habitat distribution modelling, and range mapping, uses computer algorithms to predict the distribution of a species across geographic space and time using environmental data. The environmental data are most often climate data (e.g., temperature, precipitation) but can include other variables such as soil type, water depth, and land cover. Ecological Niche Modelling is used in several research areas in conservation biology, ecology, and evolution. These models can help understand how environmental conditions influence the occurrence or abundance of a species and can be used for predictive purposes (ecological forecasting).

Predictions from an ecological niche modelling (ENM) may include:

(a) Future Distribution Under Climate Change: Predicting how the distribution of a species might shift due to changes in climate variables such as temperature and precipitation.

(b) Past Distribution for Evolutionary Studies: Assessing the historical distribution of a species to understand evolutionary relationships and historical biogeography.

(c) Potential Distribution of Invasive Species: Estimating where an invasive species might spread in the future, aiding in early detection and management efforts.

(d) Current Habitat Suitability: Identifying areas that are currently suitable for the species, which is useful for conservation planning and management.

(e) Future Habitat Suitability: Forecasting areas that may become suitable or unsuitable for a species under different scenarios, such as future climate change or land-use changes.

These predictions can inform various management applications, including:

(a) Reintroduction or translocation efforts for vulnerable or endangered species

(b) Strategic reserve placement to protect species under changing environmental conditions

(c) Planning and implementing conservation actions to mitigate the impacts of climate change on biodiversity

Here's a detailed explanation of the key components and processes involved in ENM.

Key Concepts

1. Niche:

(a) The ecological niche of a species includes all the environmental conditions under which a species can survive, grow, and reproduce. It encompasses both abiotic factors (like temperature, precipitation, soil type) and biotic factors (such as competition, predation).

(b) The fundamental niche is the full range of environmental conditions under which a species can live, while the realized niche is the actual conditions under which the species exists, considering biotic interactions and other factors.

2. Species Occurrence Data:

(a) This data includes recorded locations where a species has been observed. It can come from various sources such as field surveys, museum collections, and citizen science projects.

(b) Data quality and resolution are critical, as inaccuracies can lead to flawed models.

3. Environmental Variables:

(a) These are the abiotic and biotic factors that influence where a species can live. Commonly used variables include temperature, precipitation, elevation, soil type, and vegetation cover.

(b) Climate data, often obtained from sources like World Clim, provides historical and current climate variables at different spatial resolutions.

Modelling Process

1. Data Collection:

- Gather species occurrence records and relevant environmental variables. Ensure the data is accurate and appropriately scaled for the study.
- Use geographic information systems (GIS) to manage and visualize spatial data.

2. Data Preparation:

- Clean and preprocess data to handle issues like missing values, duplicates, and coordinate errors.
- Select relevant environmental variables that are likely to influence the species' distribution. Avoid multicollinearity (high correlation between variables) to ensure model reliability.

3. Model Selection:

Choose an appropriate modelling algorithm based on the study objectives and data characteristics. Common algorithms include:

- MaxEnt (Maximum Entropy): Widely used due to its ability to handle presence-only data and provide robust predictions.
- Bioclim: Uses climatic envelopes to predict suitable habitats.
- GARP (Genetic Algorithm for Rule-set Prediction): Employs genetic algorithms to develop predictive rules.

• Random Forests, Boosted Regression Trees: Machine learning techniques that can handle complex interactions between variables.

4. Model Calibration and Validation:

- Split the data into training and testing sets. The training set is used to build the model, while the testing set evaluates its predictive performance.
- Use metrics such as AUC (Area Under the Receiver Operating Characteristic Curve), sensitivity, specificity, and True Skill Statistic (TSS) to assess model accuracy.
- Perform cross-validation to ensure the model's robustness and to avoid overfitting.
- 5. Prediction and Mapping:
 - Use the calibrated model to predict species distribution across the study area. Generate maps that show suitable habitats under current and potential future conditions.
 - Incorporate scenarios such as climate change projections to assess how species distributions might shift over time.

6. Interpretation and Application:

- Analyze the model outputs to understand the environmental factors driving species distributions.
- Use predictions for conservation planning, such as identifying priority areas for protection, assessing habitat connectivity, and planning for species translocations or reintroductions.

Ecological Niche Modelling (ENM) Software

There are various software tools available for Ecological Niche Modelling (ENM), each offering different functionalities and capabilities. Here are some widely used ENM software:

(i) MaxEnt:

(a) Description: Uses the principle of maximum entropy to model species distributions from presenceonly data.

(b) Features: User-friendly interface, handles complex interactions between variables, widely used and well-documented.

(c) Website: MaxEnt

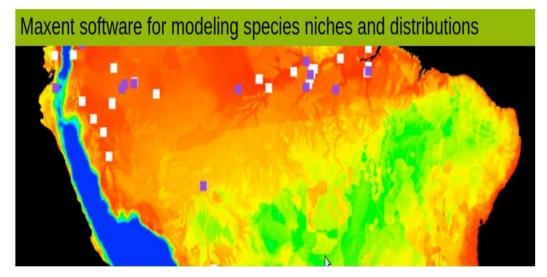


Fig4. 2: Modelling of species in Maxent software,

Source: Google

(ii) **BIOMOD**:

(a) Description: An R package that allows ensemble forecasting of species distributions by combining multiple models.

(b) Features: Integrates various algorithms (e.g., GLM, GAM, Random Forest), supports ensemble modelling.

(c) Website: BIOMOD

(iii) DIVA-GIS:

(a) Description: A free geographic information system (GIS) for mapping and analyzing biodiversity data.

(b) Features: User-friendly, includes BIOCLIM and DOMAIN models, useful for niche modelling and spatial analysis.

(c) Website: DIVA-GIS

DIVA-GIS 5.1 - MyProject1	is Mgdeling Grid Stack Iools Help	
		5 0 0
Countries		
CITIES		-
0 - 200 200 - 400 400 - 1200 1200 - 1200 1200 - 2000 2000 - 7694		
		A
		~
x: 90.2245 y: -46.6624	Scale 1 :98114398	(Design/

Fig 4.3: Modelling of species in DIVA GIS Software,

Source: Google

(iv) Open Modeller:

(a) Description: An open-source software framework for species distribution modelling.

(b) Features: Supports a wide range of algorithms, integrates with various GIS tools, extensible through plugins.

(c) Website: Open Modeller



Fig 4.4: Modelling of species in open modeller Software,

Source: Google

(v) SDM toolbox:

(a) Description: An ArcGIS extension for spatial analysis and species distribution modelling.

(b) Features: Provides tools for data preparation, model building, and result analysis, integrates with Max Ent and other modelling tools.

(c) Website: SDM toolbox

(vi) EN Meval:

(a) Description: An R package for evaluating and comparing ecological niche models.

(b) Features: Provides tools for model selection, evaluation, and tuning, specifically for MaxEnt models.

(c) Website: EN Meval

(vii) Wallace:

Description: An R-based graphical user interface for reproducible modelling of species niches and distributions.

Features: Interactive and user-friendly, integrates various ENM tools and methods, emphasizes reproducibility.

Website: Wallace

(viii) Habitat Suitability Modelling (HSM):

Description: A set of tools available in different GIS software (e.g., QGIS, ArcGIS) for creating habitat suitability models.

Features: Utilizes various algorithms and approaches to model species distributions and habitat suitability.

🤹 🏟 🗸 🦛 🎬 💹 🕢 / 日 /・治 灰・麗 恵 べ 合 臣 ち さ 三 🔍 👒 📟 🧠 物	5 75 75 🔍 🔍 😩 📥 🔟
Nonem Elle CITIC TIO	Processing Toolbox
Image: Source of the second secon	Construit, used Consigning Consender Consigning Consigning Consigning Consig

Fig4. 5: QGIS Habitat Suitability Modelling (HSM) Software,

Source: Google

These software tools provide a range of options for researchers and practitioners working on species distribution modelling, offering different levels of complexity, user-friendliness, and integration with other data analysis tools.

Applications of Ecological Niche Modelling (ENM)

a. Conservation Biology: Identifying critical habitats for endangered species and planning conservation actions.

b. Climate Change Studies: Predicting shifts in species distributions due to changing climate conditions and developing mitigation strategies.

c. Invasive Species Management: Forecasting the potential spread of invasive species and implementing control measures.

d. Biodiversity Assessments: Understanding patterns of biodiversity and guiding biodiversity monitoring programs.

Applications of Ecological Niche Modelling (ENM)

Ecological Niche Modelling (ENM) has a wide range of applications in ecology, conservation biology, and environmental management. Here is a detailed explanation of the key applications:

1. Conservation Planning

Habitat Identification and Protection: ENMs can identify suitable habitats for endangered species, helping to prioritize areas for protection and conservation. This is crucial for developing strategies for habitat restoration, reserve design, and the establishment of protected areas.

Reintroduction and Translocation: ENMs can predict suitable areas for the reintroduction of species into their historical ranges or for the translocation of species to new areas where they are more likely to survive and thrive.

2. Climate Change Impact Assessment

Predicting Future Distributions: ENMs can project changes in species distributions under different climate change scenarios, helping to understand potential shifts in biodiversity and informing adaptive management strategies.

Identifying Climate Refugia: By identifying areas that are likely to remain stable under future climate conditions, ENMs can help locate climate refugia where species might persist despite broader environmental changes.

3. Invasive Species Management

Risk Assessment: ENMs can predict the potential spread of invasive species, helping to assess risks and prioritize areas for monitoring and early intervention.

Control and Eradication: By identifying suitable habitats for invasive species, ENMs can guide efforts to control or eradicate these species, minimizing their impact on native ecosystems.

4. Biodiversity and Evolutionary Studies

Historical Biogeography: ENMs can reconstruct past species distributions, providing insights into historical biogeographical patterns and the processes driving species diversification and migration.

Phylogeography: By combining ENMs with genetic data, researchers can study the geographical distribution of genetic lineages and understand the evolutionary history of species.

5. Agricultural and Fisheries Management

Crop and Pest Modelling: ENMs can predict the distribution of crops and their pests, helping to optimize agricultural planning and pest management strategies.

Fisheries Management: ENMs can be used to predict the distribution of fish species and their habitats, aiding in the sustainable management of fisheries and marine resources.

6. Disease Ecology

Vector and Disease Modelling: ENMs can predict the distribution of disease vectors (e.g., mosquitoes) and the pathogens they carry, helping to assess disease risks and inform public health interventions.

7. Urban and Land-Use Planning

Green Infrastructure Planning: ENMs can identify areas suitable for green infrastructure (e.g., urban parks, green corridors), contributing to urban biodiversity and human well-being.

Land-Use Impact Assessment: By predicting how land-use changes affect species distributions, ENMs can inform sustainable land-use planning and development.

8. Education and Public Awareness

Raising Awareness: ENMs can be used to create visualizations and maps that raise public awareness about biodiversity and conservation issues, engaging and educating the public.

Citizen Science: ENMs can involve citizen scientists in data collection and monitoring, fostering community involvement in conservation efforts.

9. Ecological Forecasting

Predicting Ecological Changes: ENMs can be part of broader ecological forecasting efforts, predicting changes in ecosystem dynamics, species interactions, and community composition under various scenarios.

10. Policy and Decision-Making

Informing Policy: ENMs provide scientific evidence that can inform policy decisions related to biodiversity conservation, climate change adaptation, and sustainable development.

Scenario Planning: ENMs can be used in scenario planning exercises, helping policymakers and stakeholders explore the implications of different management and policy options.

By integrating environmental, climatic, and biological data, ENMs provide valuable insights that support a wide array of ecological and conservation applications. The ability to predict species distributions and habitat suitability under various conditions makes ENMs a powerful tool for addressing contemporary environmental challenges.

Limitations and Challenges

a. Data Limitations: Incomplete or biased occurrence data can affect model accuracy. Data quality and resolution are critical for reliable predictions.

b. Model Uncertainty: Different algorithms and parameter settings can produce varying results. It is essential to compare multiple models and assess their uncertainties.

c. Ecological Complexity: Simplifying complex ecological interactions into a model can overlook important factors. Biotic interactions, dispersal limitations, and evolutionary changes are challenging to incorporate.

d. Spatial and Temporal Scale: The choice of spatial and temporal scales can influence model outcomes. It's crucial to select scales that match the ecological processes of interest.

Ecological Niche Modelling is a powerful tool for understanding and predicting species distributions. By combining species occurrence data with environmental variables, ENM provides insights into the factors driving species presence and aids in making informed conservation and management decisions.

4.4 SUMMARY

Integration of Island Biogeography Theory and ENM can enhance our understanding of species distribution dynamics in insular environments. While Island Biogeography Theory provides a framework for understanding species richness patterns based on immigration and extinction rates, ENM offers a tool to predict how these patterns may shift under changing environmental conditions.

4.5 GLOSSARY

Niche: The role or function of an organism within its ecosystem, including its interactions with other organisms and its environment.

Niche: The specific conditions, resources, and interactions that define the role and position of a species within an ecosystem.

Modelling: The use of mathematical, statistical, or computational techniques to represent and analyze real-world systems and phenomena.

Ecological Niche Modelling (ENM): The use of computational algorithms to predict the distribution of species based on environmental variables and species occurrence data.

Habitat: The natural environment where a species lives and grows, providing the necessary resources and conditions for survival and reproduction.

Invasive Species: A non-native species that spreads rapidly in a new environment, often causing harm to native species, ecosystems, and human activities.

4.6 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Do you know that Ecological Niche Modelling (ENM), also known as Species Distribution Modelling (SDM), is a method used to predict the distribution of species across geographic spaces and through time based on environmental conditions and species occurrence data?

Do you know that in Modelling we use mathematical, statistical, or computational techniques to represent and analyze real-world systems and phenomena?

4.7 REFERENCES

- MacArthur, R. H., & Wilson, E. O. (1967). The Theory of Island Biogeography.
- https://bio.libretexts.org/Workbench/General_Ecology_Ecology/Chapter_21%3A_Landscape
 Ecology_and_Island_Biogeography/21.3%3A_Island_Biogeography
- https://bio.libretexts.org/Workbench/General_Ecology_Ecology/Chapter_21%3A_Landscape
 Ecology_and_Island_Biogeography/21.3%3A_Island_Biogeography

- https://www.google.com/search?q=Niche+meaning+in+geography&rlz.
- <u>https://www.nature.com/articles/s41598-022-15949-2</u>
- <u>https://a-z-animals.com/reference/ecological-niche/</u>
- <u>https://www.biologyonline.com/dictionary/ecological-niche</u>
- <u>https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Species_distribution_modelling</u>
- https://bio.libretexts.org/Workbench/General_Ecology_Ecology/Chapter_21%3A_Landscape
 Ecology_and_Island_Biogeography/21.3%3A_Island_Biogeography

4.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

Long Question

- 1. Discuss the key principles of Island Biogeography Theory and how they influence species richness on islands. Illustrate your answer with examples of how island size and isolation impact species diversity.
- 2. Explain the concept of Ecological Niche Modelling (ENM) and its application in predicting species distributions. How does ENM integrate environmental variables to forecast future habitat suitability?
- 3. Critically assess the limitations and challenges associated with Ecological Niche Modelling (ENM). How do these limitations affect the accuracy and reliability of species distribution predictions?
- 4. Compare and contrast the applications of Island Biogeography Theory and Ecological Niche Modelling (ENM) in addressing contemporary ecological challenges. How can the integration of both approaches enhance conservation strategies?

Short Question

- 1. What is the Dynamic Equilibrium Model in Island Biogeography Theory, and how does it determine species richness on islands?
- 2. Define the term "niche" in the context of Ecological Niche Modelling (ENM). What role does the "rescue effect" play in the context of Island Biogeography Theory?

- 3. Name two software tools commonly used for Ecological Niche Modelling (ENM) and briefly describe their functions.
- 4. How does Ecological Niche Modelling (ENM) help in assessing the impact of climate change on species distributions?
- 5. What is the primary purpose of Ecological Niche Modelling (ENM) in conservation biology?
- 6. How can Ecological Niche Modelling (ENM) be used to address climate change impacts on species distributions?

Multiple Choice Questions

- 1. What is the primary focus of Island Biogeography Theory?
- A) Species reproduction
- B) Species interaction with predators
- C) Balance between immigration and extinction rates in species richness
- D) Soil composition on islands
- 2. Who were the main contributors to the Theory of Island Biogeography?
- A) Charles Darwin and Alfred Russel Wallace
- B) Robert MacArthur and E.O. Wilson
- C) John Maynard Smith and Richard Dawkins
- D) Edward Wilson and David Attenborough
- 3. What does the species-area relationship indicate?
- A) Larger islands support fewer species
- B) Larger islands support more species at a decreasing rate
- C) Species richness decreases with island area

- D) Smaller islands support more species
- 4. How does island isolation affect species richness?
- A) Isolation increases species richness
- B) Isolation does not affect species richness
- C) Isolation reduces species richness
- D) Isolation always results in higher immigration rates
- 5. What is the Dynamic Equilibrium Model in Island Biogeography Theory?
- A) A model predicting species extinction only
- B) A balance between immigration and extinction rates determining species number
- C) A model focusing on island size only
- D) A model describing species competition
- 6. What does the Rescue Effect refer to in island biogeography?
- A) Higher extinction rates on near islands
- B) Lower immigration rates on far islands
- C) Reduced extinction rates on near islands due to frequent immigration
- D) Increased species richness on small, isolated islands
- 7. Which principle states that larger islands attract more immigrants?
- A) Species-Isolation Relationship
- B) Target Area Effect
- C) Species-Area Relationship
- D) Rescue Effect

- 8. What is Ecological Niche Modelling (ENM) used for?
- A) Predicting species behaviour in captivity
- B) Predicting species distributions based on environmental data
- C) Identifying genetic mutations
- D) Measuring population density in the wild
- 9. Which of the following is NOT a common algorithm used in Ecological Niche Modelling (ENM)?
- A) Max Ent
- B) Bioclim
- C) GARP
- D) E.O. Wilson Model
- 10.What does the term "niche" refer to in ecology?
- A) A specific geographic location
- B) The role and position of a species in its environment
- C) The physical characteristics of an organism
- D) The genetic makeup of a species
- 11.In Ecological Niche Modelling (ENM), what is a fundamental niche?
- A) The actual conditions where a species exists
- B) The full range of environmental conditions a species can tolerate
- C) The niche occupied by the most competitive species
- D) The area where species migration occurs
- 12. Which factor is NOT directly considered in Island Biogeography Theory?

- A) Degree of isolation
- B) Size of the island
- C) Species competition
- D) Climate change
- 13. What does ENM predict in the context of invasive species management?
- A) The genetic changes in invasive species
- B) The potential spread of invasive species
- C) The exact eradication methods for invasive species
- D) The reproduction rates of invasive species
- 14. What is one key application of Ecological Niche Modelling (ENM) in climate change studies?
- A) Predicting the exact temperature changes
- B) Assessing shifts in species distributions due to climate change
- C) Determining soil quality changes
- D) Measuring greenhouse gas emissions

Answer) 1.c, 2.b, 3.b, 4.c, 5.b, 6.c, 7.b, 8.b, 9.d, 10.b, 11.b, 12.d, 13. b, 14. b

BLOCK 2: DISPERSAL AND COLONIZATION

UNIT 5: EVOLUTIONARY BIOGEOGRAPHY: VICARIANCE VS DISPERSAL, HISTORICAL BIO-GEOGRAPHIC METHODS: PHYLOGENETICS, MOLECULAR DATING, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC REALMS AND REGIONS

5.1 OBJECTIVES

5.2 INTRODUCTION

5.3 EVOLUTIONARY BIOGEOGRAPHY: VICARIANCE VS DISPERSAL, HISTORICAL BIO-GEOGRAPHIC METHODS: PHYLOGENETICS, MOLECULAR DATING, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC REALMS AND REGIONS

5.4 SUMMARY

5.5 GLOSSARY

5.6 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

5.7 REFERENCES

5.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

5.1 OBJECTIVES

- Understand the Concepts of Vicariance and Dispersal.
- Differentiate Historical Biogeographic Methods.
- Able to know how phylogenetics and molecular dating are used to reconstruct historical biogeographic patterns.
- You will be able to know the principles of molecular dating and how it helps estimate the timing of evolutionary events and divergence.
- You will be able to Identify Biogeographic Realms and Regions.
- Define what constitutes biogeographic realms and regions and list examples of each.
- Know how to Analyze Biogeographic Patterns Across Realms.
- Compare and contrast the biogeographic patterns and species distributions among different biogeographic realms and regions.

5.2 INTRODUCTION

Evolutionary biogeography is a vital field of study that seeks to unravel the complex history behind the distribution patterns of species across the planet. At its core, it examines how historical events and processes have influenced the geographic spread and diversity of life. Two fundamental mechanisms in this field are vicariance and dispersal, which represent different ways species distributions can evolve.

Vicariance occurs when a geographical barrier, such as the rise of a mountain range or the formation of an ocean, splits a species' habitat into isolated fragments. This separation can lead to divergent evolutionary paths as species adapt to their new, isolated environments, resulting in speciation. On the other hand, dispersal involves the movement of species across existing barriers to colonize new areas. This movement can occur through various means, such as migration or human activity, and can lead to the spread of species into new habitats, potentially resulting in changes to their evolutionary trajectory.

To understand and reconstruct these historical patterns of species distribution, scientists utilize a range of historical biogeographic methods. Phylogenetics is one such method, which involves

constructing evolutionary trees (phylogenies) to depict the relationships between species based on their genetic and morphological traits. This approach helps infer how species have diversified and distributed themselves over time. Molecular dating complements this by estimating the timing of evolutionary events and divergence points using molecular data. This allows researchers to place these events within a temporal framework, enhancing our understanding of how historical changes have impacted species distributions.

In addition to these methods, the classification of biogeographic realms and regions provides a broader context for understanding species distribution. Biogeographic realms are large-scale regions that share similar climatic and ecological characteristics and have distinct evolutionary histories. Within these realms, biogeographic regions represent smaller units with specific ecological and evolutionary attributes. By examining these realms and regions, researchers can identify patterns of species distribution and endemism, offering insights into the effects of historical and environmental factors on biodiversity.

By integrating vicariance and dispersal mechanisms with phylogenetic and molecular dating methods, along with the analysis of biogeographic realms, evolutionary biogeography offers a comprehensive framework for understanding the dynamic processes that shape the distribution and diversity of life on Earth. This integrated approach is crucial for elucidating the evolutionary history of species, the impact of historical events on current biodiversity, and the implications for conservation and management strategies.

5.3 EVOLUTIONARY BIOGEOGRAPHY: VICARIANCE VS DISPERSAL, HISTORICAL BIO-GEOGRAPHIC METHODS: PHYLOGENETICS, MOLECULAR DATING, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC REALMS AND REGIONS

Evolutionary biogeography is a scientific discipline that explores the historical processes that shape the distribution patterns of species and ecosystems across the planet. This field combines principles of evolutionary biology and biogeography to understand how species have spread, diversified and adapted to different environments over geological time scales. It seeks to answer questions about the origins, dispersal, and diversification of organisms, and how these processes are influenced by geological, climatic, and ecological factors.

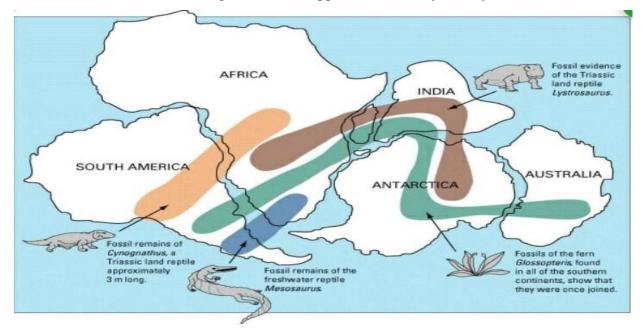
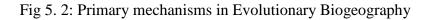


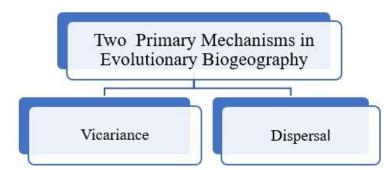
Fig 5.1: Fossil Support Evolutionary Theory

Source: Google

Key Mechanisms in Evolutionary Biogeography.

Two primary mechanisms drive the distribution of species: vicariance and dispersal.

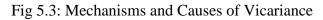


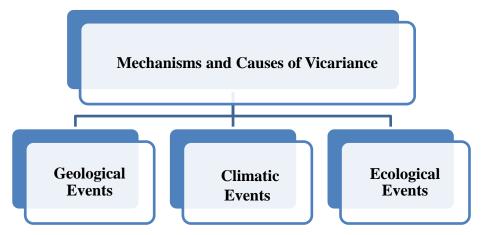


Vicariance: This occurs when a population is split into two or more isolated groups due to a geographical barrier, such as a mountain range, river, or continental drift. This isolation can lead to allopatric speciation, where the separated populations evolve independently, resulting in new species. Vicariance events are often tied to large-scale geological processes, such as plate

tectonics, that create barriers and separate populations over millions of years. Vicariance is a fundamental concept in evolutionary biogeography that refers to the separation of a widespread ancestral population into two or more geographically isolated populations due to the formation of physical barriers. These barriers can arise from geological, climatic, or ecological events, such as mountain building, river formation, continental drift, or changes in sea level. The separated populations can undergo genetic divergence over time, leading to speciation.

2. Mechanisms and Causes of Vicariance:

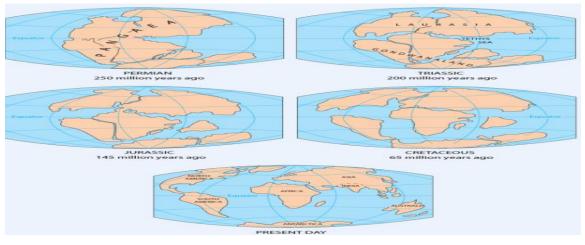




Now we will discuss these mechanisms in detail:

- a. Geological Events:
 - Plate Tectonics: The movement of Earth's lithospheric plates can lead to the breakup and collision of continents. For example, the separation of the supercontinent Pangaea into Laurasia and Gondwana created vicariant events that isolated populations on different land masses.

Fig 5.4: Plate Tectonic,



Source: Google

Mountain Building: The uplift of mountain ranges, such as the Himalayas or the Andes, can create significant barriers that divide populations and restrict gene flow.

Formation of Rivers and Lakes: The creation of large rivers or lakes can act as barriers that separate terrestrial or aquatic species into distinct populations.

b. Climatic Events:

Glaciation: Ice ages and glacial cycles can create vicariant barriers by covering large areas with ice sheets, forcing species to retreat to refugia or become isolated in ice-free areas.

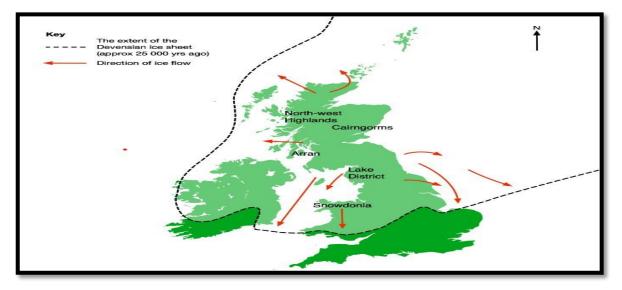


Fig 5.5: Glaciated upland areas in the British Isles (UK and Ireland)

Source: Google

UNIT 5: EVOLUTIONARY BIOGEOGRAPHY: VICARIANCE VS DISPERSAL, HISTORICAL BIO-GEOGRAPHIC METHODS: PHYLOGENETICS, MOLECULAR DATING, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC REALMS AND REGIONS. • Sea Level Changes: Fluctuations in sea level can create land bridges or isolate populations on islands. For example, during periods of low sea level, land bridges like the Bering Land Bridge connected Asia and North America, while rising sea levels later submerged these connections.

c. Ecological Events:

- Habitat Fragmentation: Changes in vegetation or habitat types, driven by climate change or human activities, can fragment populations and create ecological barriers.
- Formation of Deserts or Grasslands: Shifts in climate can convert forests into deserts or grasslands, isolating forest-dwelling species in remnant patches of suitable habitat.

3. Genetic Consequences of Vicariance:

When populations become geographically isolated, they can experience genetic divergence through several mechanisms:

a. Genetic Drift: Random changes in allele frequencies can occur in small isolated populations, leading to genetic differentiation from the ancestral population.

b. Mutation: New mutations can accumulate independently in each isolated population, contributing to genetic divergence.

c. Natural Selection: Different environmental conditions on either side of the barrier can lead to divergent selection pressures, driving adaptation to local conditions and further genetic divergence.

d. Reduced Gene Flow: The physical separation prevents gene flow between populations, allowing genetic differences to accumulate over time.

4. Speciation through Vicariance:

Vicariance is a key driver of allopatric speciation, where new species arise from geographically isolated populations. The process can be summarized in several stages:

a. Isolation: A physical barrier divides a continuous population into separate groups.

b. Divergence: Isolated populations undergo genetic divergence due to genetic drift, mutation, and natural selection.

c. Reproductive Isolation: Over time, genetic and phenotypic differences can accumulate to the point where individuals from the isolated populations can no longer interbreed, even if the barrier is removed.

d. Speciation (evolution of new species): Once reproductive isolation is established, the isolated populations are considered separate species.

5. Examples of Vicariance:

a. Continental Drift: The separation of South America and Africa led to the vicariance of many plant and animal species, resulting in distinct biotas on each continent.

b. Mountain Formation: The uplift of the Himalayas isolated populations of species, such as the snow leopard, leading to the evolution of distinct high-altitude-adapted species.

c. Glacial Cycles: During the last Ice Age, the fragmentation of forests in Europe into refugia led to the vicariance and subsequent divergence of species like the European beech.

Role in Biogeographic Patterns

Vicariance plays a crucial role in shaping global biogeographic patterns, contributing to the distribution of species and the formation of biodiversity hotspots. By studying vicariant events, scientists can reconstruct the historical processes that have shaped current biodiversity and understand how species have responded to past environmental changes.

Research Methods in Vicariance Studies:

a. Phylogenetics: Phylogenetic analyses help reconstruct the evolutionary relationships between species and identify patterns consistent with vicariant events.

b. Molecular Dating: Molecular dating techniques estimate the timing of divergence events, providing insights into the historical context of vicariant speciation.

c. Biogeographic Modelling: Biogeographic models simulate the effects of vicariant events on species distributions, helping to predict past and future biogeographic patterns.

Vicariance is a central concept in evolutionary biogeography that explains how physical barriers lead to the geographic isolation and genetic divergence of populations, ultimately resulting in speciation. By studying vicariant events and their genetic consequences, scientists can gain a deeper understanding of the historical processes that shape biodiversity and the distribution of life on Earth.

Dispersal:

Dispersal refers to the movement of individuals or propagules (such as seeds, spores, or larvae) from their place of origin to new locations. In evolutionary biogeography, dispersal is a key mechanism that influences the distribution of species, gene flow, and biodiversity. Unlike vicariance, which involves the division of populations by physical barriers, dispersal involves the active or passive movement of organisms across barriers.

Dispersal: Dispersal refers to the movement of individuals or species from one location to another, crossing existing barriers. This can happen through natural means (e.g., wind, water currents, animal movement) or human activities (e.g., the introduction of species to new areas). Dispersal can lead to the colonization of new habitats and can facilitate gene flow between populations, impacting genetic diversity and adaptation.

Types of Dispersal: Dispersal can be classified into several types based on the mechanism and scale of movement:

a. Active Dispersal: Organisms move using their energy and capabilities. Examples include the migration of birds, the movement of mammals, and the swimming of fish.

b. Passive Dispersal: Organisms rely on external forces to move. Examples include seeds carried by wind (anemochory), water (hydrochory), or animals (zoochory).

c. Long-Distance Dispersal (LDD): Dispersal events that cover great distances, often across significant barriers like oceans or mountain ranges. These events are rare but can have profound impacts on species distribution.

d. Short-Distance Dispersal: Dispersal within a local area, such as the movement of seeds within a forest or the spread of a population within a habitat.

Mechanisms of Dispersal:

a. Wind: Many plants and fungi use wind to disperse their seeds or spores. Examples include dandelions and many grasses.

b. Water: Aquatic and some terrestrial species use water for dispersal. Examples include mangrove seeds that float to new locations and fish larvae carried by ocean currents.

c. Animal-Mediated Dispersal: Animals can transport seeds, spores, or other organisms internally (endozoochory) or externally (epizoochory). Examples include birds eating fruit and excreting seeds elsewhere or insects carrying pollen.

d. Human-Mediated Dispersal: Humans play a significant role in dispersing species intentionally (e.g., agriculture, horticulture) and unintentionally (e.g., invasive species).

Genetic Consequences of Dispersal:

Dispersal influences genetic diversity and structure within and between populations:

a. Gene Flow: Dispersal facilitates gene flow, the exchange of genetic material between populations. This can reduce genetic differentiation and increase genetic diversity within populations.

b. Colonization and Founder Effects: When a small number of individuals establish a new population in a distant location, genetic drift can lead to founder effects, where the new population has different genetic characteristics than the source population.

c. Genetic Rescue: Dispersal can introduce new genetic material into small, isolated populations, reducing inbreeding and increasing genetic diversity, which can enhance population viability.

Speciation through Dispersal:

Dispersal can lead to speciation through several pathways:

a. Allopatric Speciation: Dispersal followed by geographic isolation can result in allopatric speciation. For example, a small group of individuals may colonize an island and become isolated from the mainland population, eventually diverging into a new species.

b. Parapatric Speciation: Dispersal along a gradient or into a new habitat can lead to parapatric speciation, where populations diverge while still in contact along a boundary.

c. Sympatric Speciation: Dispersal within a population can create opportunities for sympatric speciation if individuals exploit different niches or habitats within the same geographic area, leading to reproductive isolation.

Examples of Dispersal:

a. Island Biogeography: The colonization of oceanic islands by species from mainland areas is a classic example of dispersal. The Hawaiian Islands, for instance, have a unique biota that evolved from ancestors that dispersed from distant continents.

b. Range Expansion: The spread of species into new areas following climatic or environmental changes, such as the post-glacial expansion of temperate species northward after the last Ice Age.

c. Human-Mediated Dispersal: The introduction of invasive species like the European starling in North America or the spread of agricultural crops and livestock across the globe.

Role in Biogeographic Patterns:

Dispersal plays a crucial role in shaping global biogeographic patterns and contributes to the distribution of species across different regions. It can explain why closely related species are found on distant continents or how species adapt to new environments.

Research Methods in Dispersal Studies:

a. Genetic Analyses: Genetic markers and DNA sequencing help trace the origins and pathways of dispersal events, revealing the genetic relationships between populations.

b. Biogeographic Models: Models simulate dispersal scenarios and predict the spread of species based on ecological and environmental factors.

c. Paleontological Evidence: Fossil records provide historical data on the distribution of species and can indicate past dispersal events.

d. Experimental Studies: Field and laboratory experiments track the movement and establishment of organisms in new environments, providing insights into dispersal mechanisms and outcomes.

Dispersal is a dynamic and multifaceted process that significantly influences the distribution, genetic diversity, and evolution of species. By studying dispersal mechanisms and their genetic consequences, scientists can better understand how species adapt to changing environments, colonize new areas, and contribute to the richness of biodiversity on Earth.

Historical Biogeographic Methods: Detailed Explanation

Historical biogeography examines the distribution of species over time and the processes that have shaped these patterns. Several methods have been developed to reconstruct the historical biogeography of species, providing insights into how they have evolved and dispersed across different regions. Key methods include phylogenetics, molecular dating, and the study of biogeographic realms and regions.

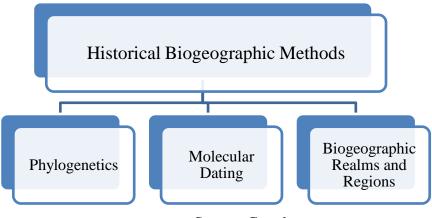


Fig 5.6: Historical Biogeographic Methods

Source: Google

1. Phylogenetics

Phylogenetics is the study of evolutionary relationships among species or groups of species. It involves constructing phylogenetic trees, which depict these relationships based on shared characteristics and genetic data.

Methods:

a. Morphological Phylogenetics: Uses physical characteristics and traits to infer evolutionary relationships.

b. Molecular Phylogenetics: Utilizes DNA, RNA, and protein sequences to reconstruct evolutionary histories. Molecular data provides more precise and detailed insights into genetic relationships.

c. Applications in Biogeography: Phylogenetic trees can reveal patterns of speciation, migration, and divergence. By mapping the geographic distribution of species onto phylogenetic trees, biogeographers can infer historical biogeographic patterns and processes.

d. Example: The study of Darwin's finches in the Galápagos Islands uses phylogenetics to understand how different species evolved from a common ancestor and dispersed across the islands.

2. Molecular Dating:

Molecular dating is a method used in the biological sciences to estimate the age of evolutionary events by analyzing the rates of change in DNA or amino acid sequences. This technique relies on the concept that genetic changes accumulate at a relatively constant rate over time, allowing scientists to infer the time since two lineages last shared a common ancestor.

In the context of historical biogeography, molecular dating helps reconstruct the past distributions of species and understand the processes that shaped their current geographic patterns. By integrating molecular data with information from fossils, geological events, and past climate changes, researchers can create a timeline of species' evolutionary history and biogeographic movements 34.

Molecular dating, or molecular clock analysis, estimates the timing of evolutionary events based on the rate of genetic mutations.

Methods:

Calibration Points: Fossil records or known historical events are used as calibration points to estimate mutation rates and divergence times.

Relaxed Molecular Clocks: Allow for variation in mutation rates across different lineages, providing more accurate dating estimates.

Applications in Biogeography: Molecular dating helps biogeographers determine when species diverged and how long they have been present in particular regions. This can be used to correlate speciation events with geological or climatic changes.

Example: Molecular dating has been used to estimate the divergence times of primates, correlating their evolution with continental drift and climatic changes over millions of years.

3. Biogeographic Realms and Regions

Biogeographic realms and regions are large-scale geographic areas with distinct flora and fauna, shaped by historical and ecological processes.

Biogeographic realms are the broadest divisions of Earth's land surface, based on the distribution patterns of terrestrial organisms. These realms reflect the evolutionary history of the organisms within each region and are separated by natural barriers such as oceans, deserts, and mountain ranges. There are eight recognized terrestrial biogeographic realms.

Biogeographic regions, on the other hand, are smaller subdivisions within these realms. They are areas of animal and plant distribution that share similar characteristics throughout. These regions are further divided into bioregions and ecoregions, which are more specific in terms of the types of ecosystems and species they contain.



Fig 5.7: Biogeographic Realms and Regions

Source: Google

UNIT 5: EVOLUTIONARY BIOGEOGRAPHY: VICARIANCE VS DISPERSAL, HISTORICAL BIO-GEOGRAPHIC METHODS: PHYLOGENETICS, MOLECULAR DATING, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC REALMS AND REGIONS.

Major Realms:

- 1) **Palearctic**: Includes Europe, North Africa, and most of Asia.
- 2) Nearctic: Covers North America.
- 3) Neotropical: Encompasses South and Central America.
- 4) Afrotropical: Includes Sub-Saharan Africa.
- 5) Indomalayan: Covers South Asia and Southeast Asia.
- 6) Australasian: Includes Australia, New Guinea, and neighbouring islands.
- 7) **Oceanian:** Encompasses the islands of the central and South Pacific.
- 8) Antarctic: Includes Antarctica and sub-Antarctic islands.

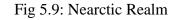
(1) Palearctic Realm: The Palearctic realm is one of the major biogeographic regions of the world, encompassing Europe, North Africa, and the majority of Asia north of the Himalayas. This vast area is characterized by a diverse range of climates and habitats, from the Mediterranean scrublands and deserts of North Africa to the temperate forests of Europe and the boreal forests and tundra of Siberia. The realm is home to a wide variety of flora and fauna, including iconic species such as the European bison, Siberian tiger, and various species of migratory birds. The Palearctic region has a rich evolutionary history, influenced by ancient continental shifts, glaciations, and human activities. Its biodiversity reflects a complex interplay of historical vicariance and dispersal events, contributing to the unique ecological landscapes seen across this expansive area.

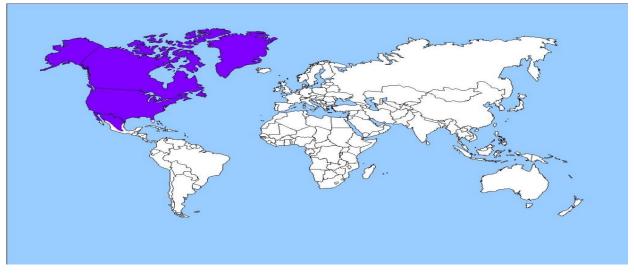
Fig 5.8: Palearctic Realm



Source: Google

UNIT 5: EVOLUTIONARY BIOGEOGRAPHY: VICARIANCE VS DISPERSAL, HISTORICAL BIO-GEOGRAPHIC METHODS: PHYLOGENETICS, MOLECULAR DATING, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC REALMS AND REGIONS. (2) Nearctic Realm: The Nearctic realm is a biogeographic region that covers North America, including Greenland, the Canadian Arctic Archipelago, and the highlands of Mexico. This realm encompasses a diverse array of ecosystems, ranging from the Arctic tundra and boreal forests of Canada to the temperate deciduous forests, grasslands, deserts, and Mediterranean woodlands of the United States and Mexico. The Nearctic region is home to a rich variety of wildlife, such as the American bison, gray wolf, bald eagle, and grizzly bear. Its flora includes extensive coniferous and deciduous forests, prairie grasses, and desert vegetation. The biodiversity of the Nearctic realm has been shaped by historical events such as glaciation, which influenced the distribution and evolution of species, as well as more recent human activities. This realm plays a crucial role in global biodiversity, offering unique habitats and a wide range of species that contribute to its ecological complexity.

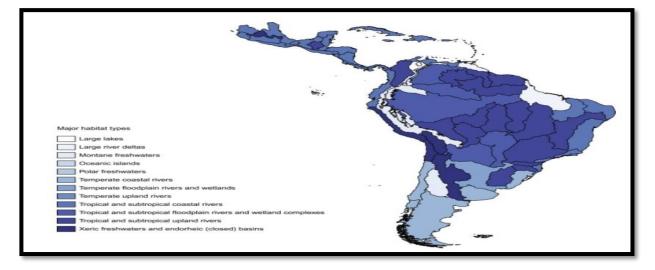


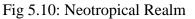


Source: Google

(3) Neotropical Realm: The Neotropical realm encompasses South and Central America, including the Caribbean islands and southern Mexico. This biogeographic region is renowned for its incredible biodiversity and unique ecosystems, such as the Amazon rainforest, the world's largest tropical rainforest, and the diverse Andean mountain range. The Neotropical realm is home to a vast array of flora and fauna, including iconic species like jaguars, sloths, macaws, and an enormous variety of plants, many of which are endemic to the region. The region's complex geography and climatic variation create numerous microhabitats that support this high level of biodiversity. The Neotropical realm is also significant for its cultural diversity, with

many indigenous communities living in harmony with the environment. Conservation efforts are critical in this region due to threats from deforestation, habitat loss, and climate change.





Source: Google

(4) Afrotropical Realm: The Afrotropical realm includes Sub-Saharan Africa, Madagascar, and the southwestern Arabian Peninsula. This biogeographic region is characterized by its rich and diverse ecosystems, ranging from savannas and tropical rainforests to deserts and mountainous areas. The Afrotropical realm is home to iconic wildlife such as elephants, lions, rhinoceroses, and gorillas, along with a plethora of bird, insect, and plant species, many of which are endemic to the region. The diverse habitats support a high level of biodiversity and complex ecological interactions. Sub-Saharan Africa is also notable for its cultural diversity, with numerous indigenous groups and traditional practices deeply connected to the natural environment. Conservation in the Afrotropical realm is crucial due to threats such as habitat destruction, poaching, and climate change, which pose significant risks to its unique and valuable biodiversity.



Fig 5.11: Afrotropical Realm

Source: Google

(5) Indomalayan Realm: The Indomalayan realm, also known as the Oriental realm, encompasses South Asia and Southeast Asia, including the Indian subcontinent, southern China, the Malay Peninsula, the Philippines, and the Indonesian archipelago. This biogeographic region is distinguished by its lush tropical rainforests, diverse mangrove ecosystems, and rich biodiversity. It is home to a wide variety of flora and fauna, including iconic species like tigers, elephants, rhinoceroses, and numerous primates. The region also boasts a high level of endemism, with many species found nowhere else on Earth. The diverse habitats within the Indomalayan realm support intricate ecological interactions and complex food webs. However, the region faces significant environmental challenges, such as deforestation, habitat fragmentation, and climate change, which threaten its unique biodiversity and the livelihoods of the communities that depend on these natural resources. Conservation efforts in the Indomalayan realm are critical to preserving its ecological integrity and ensuring the sustainability of its rich natural heritage.

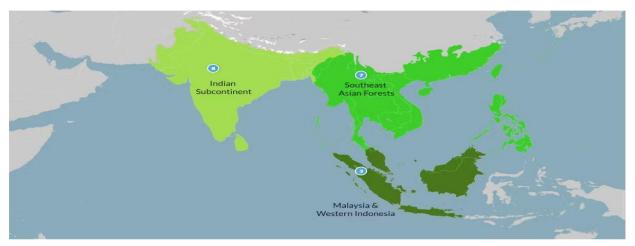
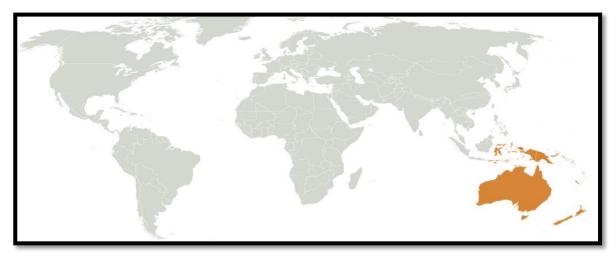


Fig 5.12: Indomalayan Realm,

Source: Google

(6) Australasian Realm: The Australasian realm encompasses Australia, New Guinea, and the neighbouring islands of the Pacific, such as New Zealand and the eastern Indonesian archipelago. This biogeographic region is renowned for its distinctive and highly diverse flora and fauna, much of which evolved in relative isolation. Australia is home to unique marsupials like kangaroos, koalas, and wombats, as well as monotreme mammals, such as the platypus and echidna. The diverse ecosystems range from the arid outback and vast savannas to lush rainforests and coastal reefs, including the Great Barrier Reef, the world's largest coral reef system. New Guinea boasts rich tropical rainforests and a high level of endemism, with numerous bird species like the birds of paradise. The region's isolation has led to significant speciation and the presence of many species that are not found elsewhere. However, the Australasian realm faces environmental challenges such as habitat loss, invasive species, and climate change, making conservation efforts crucial to protect its unique biodiversity and ecosystems.

Fig 5.13: Australasian Realm



Source: Google

(7) Oceanian realm: The Oceanian realm encompasses the myriad islands of the central and South Pacific, including Polynesia, Micronesia, and Melanesia. This biogeographic region is characterized by its vast marine environments and a multitude of isolated islands, each with unique ecosystems. The flora and fauna of Oceania exhibit a high degree of endemism due to the islands' isolation. Notable species include the flightless kagu of New Caledonia, various species of giant fruit bats, and an array of unique plant species like the endemic palms and ferns. Coral reefs, particularly in places like Fiji and the Solomon Islands, support a rich diversity of marine life, including numerous fish species, corals, and other invertebrates. The region's biodiversity is under threat from habitat destruction, invasive species, overfishing, and climate change, which impacts coral reefs and sea levels. Conservation efforts are vital to protect the unique species and

Fig 5.14: Ecosystems of the Oceanian realm.



Source: Google

UNIT 5: EVOLUTIONARY BIOGEOGRAPHY: VICARIANCE VS DISPERSAL, HISTORICAL BIO-GEOGRAPHIC METHODS: PHYLOGENETICS, MOLECULAR DATING, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC REALMS AND REGIONS. (8) Antarctic Realm: This includes the continent of Antarctica and the surrounding sub-Antarctic islands. This biogeographic region is characterized by its extreme cold, ice-covered landscape, and unique ecosystems. Despite the harsh conditions, Antarctica supports a range of specialized life forms, including various species of penguins, such as the Emperor and Adélie penguins, seals, and a diversity of seabirds. The surrounding Southern Ocean is rich in marine life, including krill, which form the basis of the food web, supporting whales, seals, and seabirds. The sub-Antarctic islands, like South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands, are important breeding grounds for many marine birds and mammals. The Antarctic region is also crucial for scientific research, particularly for studying climate change, due to its sensitivity to global temperature changes. Conservation efforts are essential to protect this pristine environment from the impacts of human activities, such as overfishing, tourism, and climate change.



Fig 5.15: Oceanian Realm,

Source: Google

Applications in Biogeography:

Studying these realms and regions helps biogeographers understand patterns of endemism, speciation, and dispersal. Comparing species composition across regions can reveal historical connections and barriers. **Example:** The unique marsupial fauna of the Australasian realm, such as kangaroos and koalas, highlights the historical isolation and evolutionary history of this region.

4. Integrative Approaches

a. Dispersal-Vicariance Analysis (DIVA): DIVA is a method that uses phylogenetic trees and species distributions to differentiate between dispersal and vicariance events. It helps determine whether species distributions are the result of long-distance dispersal or the splitting of ancestral ranges by physical barriers.

b. Ancestral Area Reconstruction: This approach uses phylogenetic and distributional data to infer the historical geographic ranges of ancestral species. It can identify areas of origin and patterns of range expansion or contraction.

c. Bayesian Methods: Bayesian inference is used to incorporate uncertainty and prior information into biogeographic models. This approach allows for more robust and statistically sound reconstructions of historical biogeography.

Example: Integrative approaches combining phylogenetics, molecular dating, and DIVA analysis have been used to reconstruct the biogeographic history of the Hawaiian honeycreepers, a diverse group of birds with a complex evolutionary history involving both dispersal and vicariance events.

5.4 SUMMARY

Evolutionary biogeography examines the distribution of species and ecosystems through time, focusing on two primary mechanisms: vicariance and dispersal. Vicariance refers to the separation of populations due to geographical barriers, leading to divergent evolution, while dispersal involves species spreading to new areas, potentially crossing existing barriers. Historical biogeographic methods provide tools to understand these processes, with phylogenetics analyzing evolutionary relationships to trace lineage divergence. Molecular dating uses genetic data to estimate the timing of evolutionary events, offering insights into historical dispersal and vicariance events. Additionally, the concept of biogeographic realms and regions helps categorize Earth's surface into distinct areas with unique species compositions, aiding in the study of large-scale biogeographic patterns and the historical processes that shaped them.

5.5 GLOSSARY

Glaciation: Glaciation is the process by which large ice sheets and glaciers form and spread over land, often resulting in significant changes to the landscape through erosion and deposition.

Phylogenetics: Phylogenetics is the study of evolutionary relationships among species or groups of organisms, often represented through a phylogenetic tree.

Dispersal: Dispersal is the movement of organisms from their birthplace to new locations, often to find resources, mating, or habitat.

Speciation: Speciation is the process by which new distinct species evolve from a single ancestral species

Realm: A realm is a large biogeographic region characterized by distinct species and ecosystems

5.6 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

- Do you know that Evolutionary biogeography is a scientific discipline that explores the historical processes that shape the distribution patterns of species and ecosystems across the planet.
- Do you know that in evolutionary biogeography, dispersal is a key mechanism that influences the distribution of species, gene flow, and biodiversity.

5.7 REFERENCES

- https://biologydictionary.net/biogeography-fossils-support-evolutionary-theory/
- <u>https://pubs.usgs.gov/gip/dynamic/historical.html</u>
- <u>https://www.internetgeography.net/topics/what-is-glaciation/</u>
- Historical Biogeography: Evolution in Time and Space | Evolution: Education and Outreach | Full Text (biomedcentral.com)
- Phylogeography Wikipedia
- Biogeography: The Study of Global Species Distribution (thoughtco.com)
- <u>https://www.internetgeography.net/topics/what-is-glaciation/</u>

- Historical Biogeography: An Introduction.—J. V. Crisci, L. Katinas, and P. Posadas.
 2003. Harvard University Press, Cambridge MA. 264 pp. ISBN 0–674–01059–0. \$45.00
 hardcover. | Systematic Biology | Oxford Academic (oup.com)
- .https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Biogeographic_realm
- https://www.textbooktravel.com/all-8-biogeographical-realms-animals-geography/
- https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Palearctic_realm
- <u>https://simple.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nearctic</u>
- <u>https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Afrotropical_realm</u>
- https://www.oneearth.org/realms/indomalaya/
- https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Australasian_realm
- https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oceanian_realm
- https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Antarctic_realm

5.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

Long Question

1.Write about the Biogeographic Realms and Regions in detail?

- 2. Write an essay on Evolutionary biogeography?
- 3. Explain the vicariance and dispersal in 1000 words?
- 4. What are the different historical biogeographic methods. Explain them in detail?

Short Question

- 1. What is Evolutionary biogeography?
- 2. What do you mean by bio-geographic realms and regions, describe these terms in 200 words?
- 3. What do you mean by vicariance. Explain it?
- 4. What is molecular dating?
- 5. What is dispersal?

Multiple Choice Questions

1. What is a primary cause of vicariance in evolutionary biogeography?

- A) Migration of species to new habitats
- B) Active dispersal of individuals across barriers
- C) The formation of physical barriers such as mountain ranges
- D) Genetic mutations within a population

- 2. Which geological event is an example of vicariance?
- A) The spread of European starlings across North America
- B) The formation of the Bering Land Bridge
- C) The separation of South America and Africa due to continental drift
- D) The colonization of islands by bird species
- 3. Which mechanism can introduce new genetic material into small, isolated populations, improving their genetic diversity?
 - A) Genetic drift
 - B) Founder effect
 - C) Genetic rescue
 - D) Mutation
- 4. How does dispersal differ from vicariance?
 - A) Dispersal refers to the movement of individuals across barriers, while vicariance involves separation by barriers.
 - B) Dispersal leads to speciation, while vicariance prevents it.
 - C) Vicariance involves the active movement of species, while dispersal is always passive.
 - D) Dispersal is a geological process, while vicariance is ecological.
- 5. Which of the following is NOT a recognized biogeographic realm?
- A) Palearctic
- B) Neotropical
- C) Australopithecus
- D) Antarctic

6. The Nearctic realm includes which of the following regions?

- A) South America
- B) Australia
- C) North America
- D) Sub-Saharan Africa

7. What is a major characteristic of the Neotropical realm?

- A) It contains the world's largest tropical rainforest, the Amazon.
- B) It covers North Africa and most of Europe.
- C) It is primarily covered by tundra and boreal forests.
- D) It is home to Antarctica's unique species.

8. Which realm is known for its iconic species such as lions, elephants, and gorillas?

- A) Oceanian
- B) Nearctic
- C) Afrotropical
- D) Palearctic

9. The Australasian realm is unique due to its:

- A) Extreme cold and ice-covered landscapes
- B) Distinctive marsupial fauna like kangaroos and koalas

- C) Endemic species of penguins
- D) High number of temperate deciduous forests

10. Which of the following regions is part of the Indomalayan realm?

A) Sub-Saharan Africa

B) The Indian subcontinent

C) Greenland

D) Antarctica

11. What major factor shapes the unique biodiversity of the Oceanian realm?

A) Its vast deserts and savannas

B) Its isolation as a group of islands in the central and South Pacific

C) Its extensive temperate forests

D) Its Mediterranean climate

12. Which of the following realms includes the sub-Antarctic islands and the continent of Antarctica?

A) Nearctic

B) Antarctic

C) Australasian

D) Indomalayan

13. Which method is used to differentiate between dispersal and vicariance events in biogeographic studies?

A) Molecular Dating

B) Bayesian Methods

C) Dispersal-Vicariance Analysis (DIVA)

D) Biogeographic Modelling

14. Which realm includes diverse ecosystems such as temperate forests, deserts, and Arctic tundra?

A) Nearctic

B) Neotropical

C) Afrotropical

D) Indomalayan

Answer) 1.c, 2.c, 3.c, 4. a, 5.c, 6.c, 7.a, 8.c, 9.b, 10.b, 11.b, 12.b, 13.c, 14.a

UNIT- 6: MODES OF DISPERSAL: WIND, MIGRATION, HUMAN-MEDIATED, COLONIZATION PATTERNS AND PROCESSES, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC BARRIERS AND CORRIDORS, COMMUNITY ASSEMBLY: SPECIES INTERACTIONS AND COMMUNITY COMPOSITION, SUCCESSION AND ECOSYSTEM DEVELOPMENT, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC PATTERNS OF DIVERSITY

6.1 OBJECTIVES

6.2 INTRODUCTION

6.3 MODES OF DISPERSAL: WIND, MIGRATION, HUMAN-MEDIATED, COLONIZATION PATTERNS AND PROCESSES, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC BARRIERS AND CORRIDORS, COMMUNITY ASSEMBLY: SPECIES INTERACTIONS AND COMMUNITY COMPOSITION, SUCCESSION AND ECOSYSTEM DEVELOPMENT, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC PATTERNS OF DIVERSITY

6.4 SUMMARY

6.5 GLOSSARY

6.6 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

6.7 REFERENCES

6.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

6.1 OBJECTIVES

- Describe and explain the different modes of dispersal and their ecological significance.
- Analyze colonization patterns and processes, including biogeographic barriers and corridors.
- Understand species interactions and their role in community assembly.
- Explore the concepts of succession and ecosystem development.
- Examine biogeographic patterns of diversity and their implications for ecosystems.

6.2 INTRODUCTION

This unit provides a comprehensive examination of the mechanisms and processes that shape ecological communities and ecosystems. Students will explore various modes of dispersal, the patterns and processes of colonization, the role of biogeographic barriers and corridors, species interactions, community assembly, ecological succession, and patterns of biodiversity.

Dispersal mechanisms are diverse strategies by which organisms spread to new locations, ensuring their survival and reproductive success. Wind dispersal involves organisms or their seeds being carried by air currents, exemplified by dandelion seeds with their lightweight, parachute-like structures. Water dispersal utilizes water currents to transport seeds or organisms, such as coconuts floating across oceans or aquatic animals moving between habitats. Animal dispersal involves organisms hitching rides on animals' bodies or being consumed and excreted in new locations, with seeds having hooks for attachment or fruits attracting animals. Gravity dispersal occurs when seeds or reproductive structures simply fall to the ground, like acorns dropping from oak trees. Lastly, human-mediated dispersal results from human activities that inadvertently or intentionally move organisms, such as non-native plants introduced through agriculture or pets into the wild. Each mechanism is adapted to its environment, ensuring species can colonize new areas and maintain ecological balance.

6.3 MODES OF DISPERSAL: WIND, MIGRATION, HUMAN-**COLONIZATION** PATTERNS MEDIATED, AND **PROCESSES**, **BIO-GEOGRAPHIC** BARRIERS AND CORRIDORS, COMMUNITY **ASSEMBLY:** SPECIES INTERACTIONS AND COMMUNITY COMPOSITION, SUCCESSION AND ECOSYSTEM DEVELOPMENT, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC PATTERNS OF DIVERSITY

Definition and Significance of Dispersal in Biogeography

Dispersal refers to the movement of organisms from their birthplace to other locations where they may establish new populations. It is a crucial process in biogeography, the study of the distribution of species and ecosystems in geographic space and through geological time.

Significance of Dispersal:

Population Dynamics: Dispersal affects the distribution, density, and genetic diversity of populations. It helps in maintaining viable populations and avoiding inbreeding by mixing genetic material between populations.

Species Distribution: Dispersal influences the geographic range of species. It determines how species spread across different habitats and continents, contributing to their current distribution patterns.

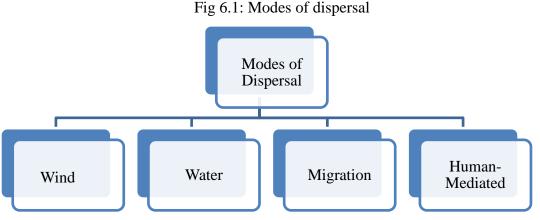
Ecosystem Functioning: Dispersal helps in the colonization of new areas and contributes to the structuring of communities. It can influence the composition and diversity of ecosystems.

Adaptation and Evolution: By moving to new environments, species may encounter different selective pressures, which can drive adaptation and evolutionary change.

Ecosystem Recovery: Dispersal is key in ecosystem recovery after disturbances (e.g., fires, floods), as it allows species to re-colonize and restore ecological functions.

Overview of Dispersal Mechanisms

Dispersal mechanisms are diverse strategies by which organisms spread to new locations, ensuring their survival and reproductive success. Wind dispersal involves organisms or their seeds being carried by air currents, exemplified by dandelion seeds with their lightweight, parachute-like structures. Water dispersal utilizes water currents to transport seeds or organisms, such as coconuts floating across oceans or aquatic animals moving between habitats. Animal dispersal involves organisms hitching rides on animals' bodies or being consumed and excreted in new locations, with seeds having hooks for attachment or fruits attracting animals. Gravity dispersal occurs when seeds or reproductive structures simply fall to the ground, like acorns dropping from oak trees. Lastly, human-mediated dispersal results from human activities that inadvertently or intentionally move organisms, such as non-native plants introduced through agriculture or pets into the wild. Each mechanism is adapted to its environment, ensuring species can colonize new areas and maintain ecological balance.



1. Wind Dispersal in Biogeography

Wind dispersal is a vital mechanism in biogeography, influencing the distribution and movement of species across landscapes. This process involves the transportation of seeds, spores, or other reproductive structures by air currents, allowing organisms to colonize new areas far from their original locations. In biogeography, wind dispersal plays a key role in shaping species distributions and community structures, particularly in open or less vegetated environments.

UNIT 6: MODES OF DISPERSAL: WIND, MIGRATION, HUMAN-MEDIATED, COLONIZATION PATTERNS AND PROCESSES, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC BARRIERS AND CORRIDORS, COMMUNITY ASSEMBLY: SPECIES INTERACTIONS AND COMMUNITY COMPOSITION, SUCCESSION AND ECOSYSTEM DEVELOPMENT, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC PATTERNS OF DIVERSITY Page: 119

Fig 6.2: Wind Dispersal



Source: Google

Key Aspects of Wind Dispersal:

a. Long-Distance Travel: Wind dispersal enables species to cover long distances, facilitating the spread of plants and fungi across various geographic regions. For example, dandelion seeds, equipped with parachute-like structures, can travel vast distances from their parent plants, colonizing new habitats and contributing to the species' wide distribution.

b. Colonization of Remote Areas: Wind dispersal is crucial for colonizing isolated or newlyformed habitats, such as volcanic islands or disturbed areas. It allows pioneer species to establish themselves in these environments, paving the way for more complex communities to develop over time.

c. Genetic Diversity: By enabling gene flow between populations separated by distance, wind dispersal enhances genetic diversity within species. This diversity is important for adaptability and resilience in changing environmental conditions.

d. Adaptations for Wind Dispersal: Many plants and fungi have evolved specific adaptations to maximize their chances of being carried by the wind. These adaptations include lightweight seeds, winged or tufted structures, and aerodynamic shapes that facilitate effective dispersal.

e. Impact on Ecosystems: Wind-dispersed species can influence ecosystem dynamics by introducing new species to an area, altering community composition, and contributing to ecological succession. For instance, the arrival of wind-dispersed plants can modify soil conditions and provide resources for other organisms.

Wind dispersal is a key biogeographic process that affects species distribution, colonization patterns, and ecosystem dynamics. Its ability to transport organisms over long distances and facilitate gene flow contributes significantly to the diversity and structure of ecological communities.

2. Water Dispersal in Biogeography

Water dispersal is a significant ecological mechanism in biogeography, enabling species to move across aquatic environments and colonize new regions. This process involves the transport of seeds, spores, or entire organisms by water currents, and it plays a crucial role in shaping species distributions, particularly in coastal, riverine, and island ecosystems.

Key Aspects of Water Dispersal:

a. Long-Distance Movement: Water dispersal allows organisms to travel over vast distances, often spanning oceans or large lakes. For example, the coconut palm's fruits are adapted to float and can drift across seas to reach distant shores, facilitating the colonization of new coastal areas.

b. Colonization of Islands and Coastal Areas: Water dispersal is essential for species colonizing isolated or newly-formed islands and coastal regions. Marine plants like seaweeds and seagrasses, as well as many aquatic animals, use water currents to spread to new locations, contributing to the establishment of diverse ecosystems.

c. Adaptations for Water Dispersal: Many organisms have evolved specialized adaptations to enhance their dispersal by water. These include buoyant structures, such as the fibrous husk of coconuts, which help them float and drift to new environments. Similarly, certain aquatic plants have seeds or spores that are designed to be carried by water currents.

d. Impact on Ecosystem Dynamics: Water-dispersed species can influence the dynamics of aquatic and riparian ecosystems by introducing new species, which can alter community structure and nutrient cycling. For instance, the introduction of floating aquatic plants can affect the light penetration and oxygen levels in water bodies.

e. Genetic Exchange: Water dispersal facilitates gene flow between populations separated by water bodies, contributing to genetic diversity and the adaptation of species to varying environmental conditions. This exchange is crucial for maintaining healthy and resilient populations.

Water dispersal is a critical biogeographic process that affects the distribution and dynamics of species across aquatic environments. By enabling long-distance travel and colonization of remote areas, it shapes ecosystem structure, enhances genetic diversity, and supports the establishment of diverse ecological communities.

3. Migration Mode of dispersal

Migration as a mode of dispersal involves large-scale, often seasonal movements of species from one habitat to another. It is an important ecological and evolutionary process that helps species survive in varying environmental conditions and optimize their reproductive success.

(iii) Migration

Description: This involves large-scale, often cyclical movements of species from one habitat to another, typically in response to seasonal changes, resource availability, or reproductive needs.

Characteristics:

- (i) Regular and predictable
- (ii) Often involves long distances
- (iii) May occur annually or seasonally

Examples:

(i) Monarch Butterflies (Danaus plexippus): These butterflies migrate thousands of miles between North America and Mexico, moving to warmer climates to survive the winter and returning north to reproduce in the spring and summer.

(ii) Bird Species: Many bird species, such as the Arctic Tern, migrate between breeding grounds in the Arctic and wintering grounds in the Antarctic. Other examples include swallows and geese.

In biogeography, the migration mode of dispersal refers to how organisms move from one location to another, influencing the distribution of species across geographic areas. There are several key modes of dispersal: Human-mediated dispersal in biogeography refers to the movement of species facilitated by human activities. This can be intentional or unintentional and has significant implications for ecosystems, biodiversity, and the distribution of species.

4. Human-Mediated Dispersal

Human-mediated dispersal in biogeography refers to the movement of species facilitated by human activities. This can be intentional or unintentional and has significant implications for ecosystems, biodiversity, and the distribution of species.

Types:

a) Intentional Dispersal: Humans deliberately move species for agriculture, horticulture, aquaculture, or as pets.

b) Unintentional Dispersal: Species are accidentally transported through trade, travel, and various human activities.

Examples:

a) Intentional Dispersal:

i) Agricultural Crops: The global spread of crops like wheat, rice, and corn.

- ii) Ornamental Plants: Introduction of exotic plants for gardening and landscaping.
- iii) Livestock: Movement of domesticated animals like cattle, sheep, and chickens across continents.
- b) Unintentional Dispersal:
 - i) Ballast Water: Ships take in ballast water in one port and discharge it in another, introducing marine species like zebra mussels to new environments.
 - ii) Trade and Travel: Insects like the Asian longhorn beetle or the brown marmorated stink bug hitch rides in cargo, packaging, and vehicles.
 - iii) Clothing and Equipment: Seeds and small organisms can cling to clothing, shoes, or outdoor equipment, leading to their dispersal.

UNIT 6: MODES OF DISPERSAL: WIND, MIGRATION, HUMAN-MEDIATED, COLONIZATION PATTERNS AND PROCESSES, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC BARRIERS AND CORRIDORS, COMMUNITY ASSEMBLY: SPECIES INTERACTIONS AND COMMUNITY COMPOSITION, SUCCESSION AND ECOSYSTEM DEVELOPMENT, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC PATTERNS OF DIVERSITY Page: 123

Impacts

Invasive Species: Some human-mediated dispersals result in invasive species that outcompete native species, disrupt ecosystems, and cause economic damage. Examples include the introduction of kudzu in the United States and the cane toad in Australia.

Biodiversity: The spread of non-native species can lead to a decline in biodiversity by displacing native species and altering habitats.

Disease Spread: Human activities can also facilitate the spread of diseases, affecting both humans and wildlife. Examples include the spread of the West Nile virus and the chytrid fungus affecting amphibians.

Management and Mitigation

Regulations: Implementing and enforcing regulations on the transport of plants, animals, and goods to prevent the introduction of invasive species.

Monitoring and Control: Monitoring ecosystems for early detection of invasive species and implementing control measures to manage their spread.

Public Awareness: Educating the public about the risks and impacts of transporting species and promoting responsible behaviours.

Human-mediated dispersal is a significant factor in contemporary biogeography, shaping the distribution of species and influencing ecological dynamics on a global scale.

Colonization patterns and processes:

The literal meaning of colonization is Migration to and settlement in an inhabited or uninhabited area or the spread and development of an organism in a new area or habitat.

Colonization patterns and processes in biogeography involve the establishment and spread of species in new areas, shaping the distribution of biodiversity. These patterns and processes are influenced by various factors including dispersal mechanisms, environmental conditions, and interactions with existing species.

Colonization Patterns

(i) Island Colonization:

Description: Islands provide unique opportunities to study colonization due to their isolation and distinct ecosystems.

Patterns: Species often arrive via long-distance dispersal (e.g., birds, insects, seeds carried by wind or water) and can rapidly evolve due to the isolated environment.

Example: The colonization of the Galápagos Islands by finches and their subsequent adaptive radiation into multiple species.

(ii) Mainland Colonization:

Description: Colonization on continents involves the spread of species into new areas, often following disturbances like fires or human activities.

Patterns: Can involve gradual expansion or sudden bursts of colonization following environmental changes.

Example: The spread of plant species into newly available habitats after a volcanic eruption or forest clearing.

(iii) Secondary Colonization:

Description: Occurs when species re-colonize areas from which they were previously extirpated.

Patterns: Often follows restoration efforts or natural recovery of habitats.

Example: Reintroduction of wolves into Yellowstone National Park and their subsequent spread.

Colonization Processes

- 1. Dispersal:
 - Description: The movement of species from their place of origin to new locations.
 - Mechanisms: Includes wind, water, animal vectors, and human-mediated transport.
 - Example: Seeds of dandelions dispersed by wind.

- 2. Establishment:
 - Description: The successful establishment of a population in a new area, involving survival and reproduction.
 - Factors: Suitable habitat, availability of resources, absence of extreme environmental stressors, and low levels of predation or competition.
 - Example: Colonization of coastal areas by mangrove trees.
- 3. Expansion:
 - Description: The spread of the established population into surrounding areas.
 - Factors: Reproductive success, dispersal capabilities, and adaptability to varying conditions.
 - Example: Expansion of invasive species like the European starling in North America.
- 4. Ecological Interactions:
 - Description: Interactions with other species, such as competition, predation, and mutualism, that influence colonization success.
 - Factors: Presence of competitors, predators, and mutualistic partners.
 - Example: The mutualistic relationship between certain ants and acacia trees, aiding in the trees' colonization of new areas.
- 5. Evolutionary Adaptation:
 - Description: Evolutionary changes that enhance the ability of species to colonize and thrive in new environments.
 - Factors: Natural selection, genetic drift, and gene flow.
 - Example: Adaptive radiation of cichlid fish in African Great Lakes, leading to high species diversity.

Influences on Colonization

- 1. Environmental Conditions:
 - Climate: Temperature, precipitation, and seasonality.
 - Habitat: Availability of suitable habitat and resources.

- Disturbances: Natural (e.g., fires, floods) and anthropogenic (e.g., deforestation, urbanization) disturbances.
- 2. Biotic Factors:
 - Existing Communities: Presence of resident species that can facilitate or hinder colonization.
 - Species Interactions: Competition, predation, and symbiosis.
- 3. Anthropogenic Factors:
 - Human Activities: Habitat modification, introduction of non-native species, and climate change.
 - Conservation Efforts: Habitat restoration, species reintroduction, and protected areas.

Understanding colonization patterns and processes is crucial for managing ecosystems, conserving biodiversity, and predicting the impacts of environmental changes and human activities on species distributions.

Understanding colonization patterns and processes is essential for comprehending how biodiversity is distributed across the Earth. The interplay of biotic and abiotic factors, along with evolutionary mechanisms, shapes the way species colonize and establish in new areas. Studying these patterns not only helps in conservation efforts but also provides a deeper understanding of ecological and evolutionary dynamics.

Bio-geographic barriers and corridors in biogeography

In biogeography, barriers and corridors play critical roles in the distribution and movement of species across different geographic areas.

Barriers: Barriers are physical or environmental features that restrict or prevent the movement of species from one area to another. These barriers can be:

- 1. Physical Barriers:
- a) Mountains: High Mountain ranges can act as significant barriers to the movement of terrestrial species.

Fig 6.3: Mountain as Physical Barriers



Source: Google

- b) Oceans and Seas: Large bodies of water can prevent terrestrial species from dispersing between land masses.
- c) Rivers and Lakes: Large rivers and lakes can be barriers to the movement of terrestrial species, although some species may swim across or use bridges.
- d) Deserts: Vast desert areas with extreme conditions can limit the movement of many species.



Fig 6.4: Desert as Physical Barriers

Source: Google

UNIT 6: MODES OF DISPERSAL: WIND, MIGRATION, HUMAN-MEDIATED, COLONIZATION PATTERNS AND PROCESSES, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC BARRIERS AND CORRIDORS, COMMUNITY ASSEMBLY: SPECIES INTERACTIONS AND COMMUNITY COMPOSITION, SUCCESSION AND ECOSYSTEM DEVELOPMENT, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC PATTERNS OF DIVERSITY Page: 128

2. Climatic Barriers:

a) Temperature Extremes: Areas with extreme temperatures, either hot or cold, can act as barriers.

b) Precipitation Levels: Regions with very high or very low precipitation can limit species distribution.

3. Biological Barriers:

a) Predation and Competition: The presence of predators or competitors can restrict the movement and establishment of species in new areas.

b) Disease and Parasites: The presence of diseases or parasites in certain areas can prevent species from colonizing those regions.

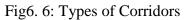
Corridors: Corridors are pathways that allow the movement of species between otherwise isolated areas. These can facilitate gene flow, migration, and the expansion of species' ranges.

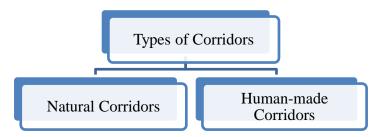


Fig 6.5: Human-Made Corridor

Source: Google

Types of corridors include:





UNIT 6: MODES OF DISPERSAL: WIND, MIGRATION, HUMAN-MEDIATED, COLONIZATION PATTERNS AND PROCESSES, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC BARRIERS AND CORRIDORS, COMMUNITY ASSEMBLY: SPECIES INTERACTIONS AND COMMUNITY COMPOSITION, SUCCESSION AND ECOSYSTEM DEVELOPMENT, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC PATTERNS OF DIVERSITY Page: 129 (i) Natural Corridors:

a. River Valleys: These can provide pathways for species to move between different regions.b. Mountain Passes: Gaps or lower areas in mountain ranges can act as corridors for species to move through.

c. Forest Strips: Continuous stretches of forest can connect fragmented habitats and allow species to move between them.

(ii) Human-Made Corridors:

a. Wildlife Bridges and Underpasses: Structures built over or under roads and railways to allow safe passage for wildlife.

b. Greenways: Strips of vegetation in urban areas designed to connect larger natural areas and allow species movement.

c. Canals: Sometimes canals and other waterway constructions can inadvertently serve as corridors for aquatic species.

Importance in Conservation

Understanding barriers and corridors is essential in conservation biology to ensure the connectivity of habitats and the movement of species, which is critical for maintaining biodiversity. Efforts to create or maintain corridors can help mitigate the impacts of habitat fragmentation and climate change on species distributions.

Community Assembly: Species interactions and community composition

Community assembly in biogeography involves understanding how species interactions and various processes determine the composition and structure of ecological communities. It focuses on the mechanisms that govern which species coexist and how they do so in different environments. In biogeography, species interactions refer to the various ways in which species influence each other's distribution, abundance, and evolutionary trajectories within specific geographic regions. These interactions are fundamental to understanding how species coexist and how communities and ecosystems are structured and function over time. Community composition in biogeography refers to the variety and abundance of species within a specific

community or ecosystem, and how these species are distributed and interact within that environment. This composition is influenced by various biotic and abiotic factors, including species interactions, environmental conditions, historical events, and spatial dynamics.

Species Interactions

Species interactions play a critical role in shaping community composition. These interactions include:

(i) Competition:

a) Intraspecific Competition: Competition among individuals of the same species for resources such as food, space, or mates.

b) Interspecific Competition: Competition between different species for similar resources. This can lead to competitive exclusion or niche differentiation.

(ii) Predation:

Predator-Prey Relationships: Predators can regulate prey populations, which in turn can influence the distribution and abundance of both predators and prey within a community.

(iii) Mutualism:

Mutually Beneficial Relationships: Interactions where both species benefit, such as pollination (plants and pollinators) and mycorrhizal associations (plants and fungi).

(iv) Parasitism and Disease:

Host-Parasite Dynamics: Parasites can influence host population dynamics and community structure by affecting the health and survival of host species.

(v) Facilitation: Positive Interactions: Some species can positively influence the presence of others, such as plants that improve soil conditions for other plants or species that provide habitat for others.

Processes Influencing Community Composition

Several processes interact to determine community composition, including:

(i) Dispersal and Colonization: The movement of species from one location to another and their ability to establish populations in new areas. Dispersal mechanisms (e.g., wind, water, animals) and barriers (e.g., mountains, oceans) influence this process.

(ii) Environmental Filtering: The process by which the abiotic environment (e.g., climate, soil type, water availability) selects for species with certain traits that can survive and thrive under specific conditions.

(iii) Historical Contingency: The history of species introductions and extinctions in an area can influence current community composition. Past events such as glaciations, land-use changes, and species invasions leave lasting impacts.

(iv) Ecological Drift: Random changes in species abundance and composition due to stochastic events, particularly in small populations. This can lead to variability in community composition independent of deterministic processes.

(v) Evolutionary Processes: Adaptive evolution can shape species traits, influencing their interactions and the roles they play within communities. Coevolution between interacting species can also be significant.

Community Assembly Theories

Several theories attempt to explain community assembly, including:

(i) Neutral Theory: Suggests that community composition is largely driven by stochastic processes (random birth, death, and dispersal events) rather than niche differentiation.

(ii) Niche Theory: Proposes that species coexistence is primarily determined by niche differentiation, where species occupy different niches to reduce competition and increase resource use efficiency.

(iii) Meta community Theory: Integrates the roles of local interactions and regional processes, emphasizing the importance of species dispersal among communities (meta communities) and the influence of spatial dynamics on community structure.

Role of Species Interactions in Biogeography

(i) Influence on Species Distribution: Species interactions can limit or promote the geographic distribution of species. For instance, strong competition can restrict a species' range, while mutualistic relationships can facilitate colonization and expansion.

(ii) Impact on Community Composition: The presence and strength of species interactions shape community composition. Predators can control the population sizes of prey species, and mutualistic relationships can enhance biodiversity by supporting a greater variety of species.

(iii) Adaptive Evolution: Interactions between species drive evolutionary changes. Predatorprey interactions, for example, can lead to the development of defence mechanisms in prey and hunting adaptations in predators.

(iv) Ecological Niches: Species interactions help define ecological niches, influencing how species partition resources and coexist in the same habitat. Niche differentiation reduces competition and allows for greater species diversity within a community.

(v) Ecosystem Functioning: Interactions among species contribute to ecosystem processes such as nutrient cycling, energy flow, and habitat formation. For example, decomposers break down organic matter, returning nutrients to the soil, and pollinators play a critical role in plant reproduction.

Examples of Species Interactions in Different Biogeographic Regions

(a) Tropical Rainforests: High levels of mutualism (e.g., plant-pollinator interactions), competition for light, and predator-prey dynamics maintain the complex and diverse communities.

(b) Deserts: Species interactions often revolve around water conservation and resource competition. Facilitation, such as nurse plants providing shade, is common.

(c) Temperate Forests: Competition for resources such as light and nutrients, as well as mutualistic relationships like mycorrhizal fungi with trees, are significant.

(d) Grasslands: Herbivory and predation play crucial roles, with grazing animals impacting plant community composition and predators regulating herbivore populations.

(e) Marine Ecosystems: Interactions such as predation, competition for space on coral reefs, and mutualistic relationships (e.g., clownfish and anemones) shape community structure.

Succession and ecosystem developments, Bio-geographic patterns of diversity

UNIT 6: MODES OF DISPERSAL: WIND, MIGRATION, HUMAN-MEDIATED, COLONIZATION PATTERNS AND PROCESSES, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC BARRIERS AND CORRIDORS, COMMUNITY ASSEMBLY: SPECIES INTERACTIONS AND COMMUNITY COMPOSITION, SUCCESSION AND ECOSYSTEM DEVELOPMENT, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC PATTERNS OF DIVERSITY Page: 133

Succession and Ecosystem Development

Succession and ecosystem development are fundamental concepts in biogeography, reflecting the dynamic nature of ecosystems over time. Succession is the process through which ecosystems undergo structural changes, leading to a series of progressive stages from a disturbed or barren environment to a mature, stable community. Primary succession begins in lifeless areas, such as regions left bare by glaciers or volcanic eruptions, where soil formation is a critical initial step. Secondary succession occurs in areas where a disturbance has not destroyed the soil, such as after forest fires, storms, or human activities. Ecosystem development during succession involves changes in species composition, biodiversity, and ecosystem function. Early stages are typically characterized by pioneer species that are hardy and adaptable, while later stages see the establishment of more complex and stable communities. This process is influenced by various biotic and abiotic factors, including climate, soil fertility, species interactions, and disturbance regimes. Understanding succession and ecosystem development is essential for biogeography as it helps explain the spatial distribution and temporal dynamics of ecosystems across the Earth's surface.

Ecological Succession refers to the gradual process by which ecosystems change and develop over time. There are two main types of succession:

(i) Primary Succession:

- (a) Occurs on newly exposed surfaces where no soil exists, such as lava flows, glacial retreats, or bare rock.
- (b) Begins with pioneer species, such as lichens and mosses, which can tolerate harsh conditions and help create soil by breaking down rock and accumulating organic material.
- (c) Over time, soil formation allows for the establishment of grasses, shrubs, and eventually trees, leading to a more complex and stable ecosystem.

(ii) Secondary Succession:

- (a) Occurs in areas where a disturbance has destroyed an existing community but left the soil intact, such as after a fire, flood, or human activities like farming.
- (b) Progresses faster than primary succession because soil and seed banks are already present.

UNIT 6: MODES OF DISPERSAL: WIND, MIGRATION, HUMAN-MEDIATED, COLONIZATION PATTERNS AND PROCESSES, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC BARRIERS AND CORRIDORS, COMMUNITY ASSEMBLY: SPECIES INTERACTIONS AND COMMUNITY COMPOSITION, SUCCESSION AND ECOSYSTEM DEVELOPMENT, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC PATTERNS OF DIVERSITY Page: 134 (c) Pioneer species like grasses and weeds are quickly replaced by more competitive plants, shrubs, and trees, restoring the ecosystem to its previous state or a new stable state.

Stages of Succession:

- (a) Pioneer Stage: Characterized by hardy species that are first to colonize barren or disturbed areas. These species modify the environment, making it more suitable for other species.
- (b) Intermediate Stages: Involve the establishment of more diverse plant species, leading to increased complexity in the structure and function of the ecosystem.
- (c) Climax Community: A stable, mature community that has reached equilibrium. It remains relatively unchanged until disrupted by an event.

Biogeographic Patterns of Diversity

Biogeographic patterns of diversity refer to the spatial distribution of species and ecosystems across the Earth's surface. These patterns are influenced by a variety of ecological, evolutionary, and historical factors.

(i) Latitudinal Gradients:

Tropical Biodiversity: Species richness typically increases towards the equator. Tropical regions, such as rainforests, host the highest biodiversity due to stable climates, high primary productivity, and complex habitats. Polar and Temperate Regions: These regions tend to have lower species diversity due to harsher climates and less stable environmental conditions.

(ii) Altitudinal Gradients:

Species diversity changes with altitude. Lower altitudes usually have higher biodiversity, while higher altitudes, with more extreme conditions and less available habitat, have fewer species.

(iii) Island Biogeography:

Species-Area Relationship: Larger islands tend to have higher biodiversity due to a greater variety of habitats and resources.

Isolation Effects: Islands closer to the mainland have higher species diversity because they receive more immigrants, while isolated islands have lower diversity.

(iv) Habitat Heterogeneity:

Areas with diverse habitats support more species by providing a variety of niches. Complex environments like mountains, river valleys, and coral reefs host high levels of biodiversity.

(v) Historical Factors:

Historical events like glaciations, continental drift, and volcanic eruptions have shaped current biodiversity patterns. Regions with stable climates over geological timescales tend to have higher diversity.

(vi) Evolutionary Processes:

Speciation: The formation of new species through evolutionary processes contributes to regional biodiversity.

Extinction: Natural and anthropogenic extinctions affect species diversity and distribution.

(vii) Human Influence:

Habitat Destruction: Urbanization, deforestation, and agriculture reduce biodiversity by destroying and fragmenting habitats.

Climate Change: Alters habitats and can shift the distribution of species.

Introduced Species: Can outcompete, prey on, or bring diseases to native species, impacting local biodiversity.

Ecological succession and biogeographic patterns of diversity are fundamental concepts in understanding how ecosystems develop and how biodiversity is distributed across the Earth. These insights are essential for conserving and managing natural resources in a rapidly changing world.

6.4 SUMMARY

Biogeography examines the distribution of species and ecosystems across the Earth through various modes of dispersal and patterns of diversity. Key dispersal modes include wind, which aids in the spread of seeds and spores over long distances; migration, where species move seasonally or due to environmental changes; and human-mediated dispersal, which introduces species to new areas via trade, travel, and other activities. Colonization

UNIT 6: MODES OF DISPERSAL: WIND, MIGRATION, HUMAN-MEDIATED, COLONIZATION PATTERNS AND PROCESSES, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC BARRIERS AND CORRIDORS, COMMUNITY ASSEMBLY: SPECIES INTERACTIONS AND COMMUNITY COMPOSITION, SUCCESSION AND ECOSYSTEM DEVELOPMENT, BIO-GEOGRAPHIC PATTERNS OF DIVERSITY Page: 136 patterns reveal how species establish themselves in new environments, influenced by biogeographic barriers (such as mountains or oceans) and corridors (like rivers or lowlands) that facilitate or hinder movement. Community assembly is shaped by species interactions— such as competition, predation, and mutualism—and contributes to community composition and ecosystem dynamics. Succession and ecosystem development describe how communities evolve from disturbed or newly formed environments to stable, mature systems. These processes and patterns collectively inform our understanding of biodiversity, highlighting the complexity of species distribution and the intricate interplay between environmental factors and biological interactions.

6.5 GLOSSARY

Wind dispersal: Wind dispersal is the process by which seeds, spores, or other small organisms are transported through the air to new locations by wind currents, enabling species to spread across wide areas.

Colonization patterns: Colonization patterns in biogeography refer to how species establish and spread in new environments, influenced by factors like habitat availability, dispersal mechanisms, and ecological interactions.

Succession: Succession is the process of gradual ecological change and development in an ecosystem, where species composition and community structure evolve from a disturbed or barren environment to a stable, mature state.

Speciation: Speciation is the evolutionary process through which new species arise from existing ones, typically due to genetic divergence and reproductive isolation.

Biogeographic barriers: Biogeographic barriers are physical or environmental features, such as mountains, oceans, or deserts, that prevent or limit the movement and dispersal of species, influencing their distribution and evolution.

Biogeographic corridors: Biogeographic corridors are natural routes, such as river valleys or strips of forest, that facilitate the movement and dispersal of species between different regions, promoting genetic exchange and biodiversity.

6.6 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

- Do you know that barriers are physical or environmental features that restrict or prevent the movement of species from one area to another?
- Do you know that Human-mediated dispersal in biogeography refers to the movement of species facilitated by human activities. This can be intentional or unintentional and has significant implications for ecosystems, biodiversity, and the distribution of species.

6.7 REFERENCES

- https://www.sciencelearn.org.nz/resources/103-seed-dispersal
- https://www.nature.com/articles/s41598-017-04421-1
- Jaiv Bhopal, Savindra Singh, Pravallikha Publication 11/60, University Road Allahabad, 2016
- https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1002/9780470015902.a0003237.pub3
- https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Biological_dispersal
- https://www.researchgate.net/publication/323825708_Dispersal_Biogeography
- https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/30314915/
- Human-mediated dispersal redefines mangrove biogeography in the Anthropocene (wiley.com)
- https://link.springer.com/chapter/10.1007/978-94-011-6084-1_6
- https://www.google.com/search?sca_esv=9267af3241730e66&sca_upv=1&rlz=1C1CH BD_
- https://news.mongabay.com/2023/03/reconnecting-island-habitat-with-wild-corridorsin-brazils-atlantic-forest/
- https://london-nerc-dtp.org/2017/11/29/breaking-barriers-green-deserts-windowshomo-sapiens-dispersals/
- https://www.nature.com/scitable/knowledge/library/succession-a-closer-look-13256638/

6.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

Long Questions

- 1. Explain the modes of dispersal: wind, water, migration, human-mediated?
- 2. Explain in detail bio-geographic barriers and corridors?

Short Question

- 1. What are the five main dispersal mechanisms discussed?
- 2. Why is wind dispersal important in biogeography?
- 3. How does water dispersal contribute to species distribution?
- 4. What role does human-mediated dispersal play in biogeography?
- 5. What is the difference between primary and secondary succession?
- 6. How do species interactions influence community composition?
- 7. What are some examples of environmental conditions that influence colonization patterns?

Multiple Choice Questions.

- 1. Which dispersal mechanism involves seeds or organisms being carried by air currents?
- a) Water dispersal
- b) Animal dispersal
- c) Gravity dispersal
- d) Wind dispersal
- 2. What type of dispersal is exemplified by coconuts floating across oceans?
- a) Wind dispersal
- b) Water dispersal
- c) Gravity dispersal
- d) Human-mediated dispersal
- 3. Which of the following is NOT a characteristic of wind dispersal?
- a) Long-distance travel
- b) Colonization of remote areas
- c) Requires attachment to animals

- d) Genetic diversity enhancement
- 4. Which dispersal mechanism results from human activities, such as introducing non-native plants through agriculture?
- a) Wind dispersal
- b) Animal dispersal
- c) Gravity dispersal
- d) Human-mediated dispersal
- 5. What is the primary factor in determining the colonization patterns on islands?
- a) Competition with existing species
- b) Long-distance dispersal
- c) Presence of predators
- d) Climate conditions
- 6. Which type of dispersal involves large-scale, often seasonal movements of species from one habitat to another?
- a) Wind dispersal
- b) Water dispersal
- c) Migration
- d) Human-mediated dispersal
- 7. What type of corridor is created by continuous stretches of forest connecting fragmented habitats?
- a) Human-made corridors
- b) Natural corridors
- c) Climate corridors
- d) Biological corridors

- 8. Which of the following is an example of intentional human-mediated dispersal?
- a) Zebra mussels transported through ballast water
- b) Introduction of ornamental plants for gardening
- c) Insects hitching rides in cargo
- d) Seeds clinging to clothing
- 9. Which of the following factors can act as a climatic barrier to species dispersal?
- a) Mountain ranges
- b) Rivers
- c) Temperature extremes
- d) Deserts

10.In ecological succession, what type of community is characterized by a stable, mature state?

- a) Pioneer community
- b) Intermediate community
- c) Climax community
- d) Secondary community
- 11. Which theory suggests that community composition is largely driven by random processes rather than niche differentiation?
- a) Neutral theory
- b) Niche theory
- c) Meta-community theory
- d) Succession theory
- 12. What is the primary difference between primary and secondary succession?
- a) Presence of soil

- b) Type of pioneer species
- c) Speed of the process
- d) Availability of water
- 13. Which of the following is an example of a mutualistic relationship in species interactions?
- a) Predator-prey relationship
- b) Competition for resources
- c) Pollination by bees
- d) Parasitism and disease
- 14. What is the significance of understanding colonization patterns and processes in biogeography?
- a) To identify barriers to species movement
- b) To manage ecosystems and conserve biodiversity
- c) To study climatic variations
- d) To analyze genetic diversity
- 15. Which of the following is a key aspect of water dispersal?
- a) Genetic exchange between populations
- b) Adaptations for wind dispersal
- c) Large-scale seasonal movements
- d) Long-distance travel by air currents

Answers) 1.d, 2.b, 3.c, 4.d, 5.b, 6.c, 7.b, 8.b, 9.c, 10.c, 11.a, 12.a, 13.c, 14.b, 15.a

UNIT-7 BIOGEOGRAPHY OF CLIMATE CHANGE, CLIMATE CHANGE IMPACTS ON SPECIES DISTRIBUTIONS, RANGE SHIFTS AND BIO-GEOGRAPHIC RESPONSES, CONSERVATION IMPLICATIONS AND ADAPTATION STRATEGIES

7.1 OBJECTIVES

7.2 INTRODUCTION

7.3 BIOGEOGRAPHY OF CLIMATE CHANGE, CLIMATE CHANGE IMPACTS ON SPECIES DISTRIBUTIONS, RANGE SHIFTS AND BIO-GEOGRAPHIC RESPONSES, CONSERVATION IMPLICATIONS AND ADAPTATION STRATEGIES

7.1BIOGEOGRAPHY OF CLIMATE CHANGE

7.2 CLIMATE CHANGE IMPACTS ON SPECIES DISTRIBUTIONS

7.3 CLIMATE CHANGE IMPACTS ON RANGE SHIFTS AND BIO-GEOGRAPHIC RESPONSES

7.4 BIOGEOGRAPHY OF CLIMATE CHANGE: CONSERVATION IMPLICATIONS AND ADAPTATION STRATEGIES

7.4 SUMMARY

7.5 GLOSSARY

7.6 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

7.7 REFERENCES

7.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

7.1 OBJECTIVES

After reading this unit, you will be able to:

- Know about the biogeography of climate change.
- Understanding climate change impacts on species distribution.
- Gain knowledge about range shifts and bio-geographic response.
- Know about conservation implications and adaptation strategies.

7.2 INTRODUCTION

Biogeography, the study of the distribution of species and ecosystems across geographic space and through geological time, is increasingly intertwined with the issue of climate change. As global temperatures rise and weather patterns become more unpredictable, the biogeographic patterns of species are being disrupted. Climate change is altering the habitats that species rely on, forcing them to move, adapt, or face extinction. Understanding the biogeography of climate change is crucial for predicting how species distributions might shift, which ecosystems are most at risk, and how to manage best and conserve biodiversity in a rapidly changing world.

Climate change significantly impacts species distributions by shifting the environmental conditions that define their habitats. As temperatures rise, many species migrate toward the poles or higher elevations in search of cooler climates. Changes in precipitation patterns, the frequency of extreme weather events, and the availability of water and food resources are also driving these shifts. Species that are unable to migrate or adapt quickly enough to the changing conditions are at risk of population declines or extinction. The disruption of these distributions not only affects individual species but also the communities and ecosystems they form, leading to cascading ecological impacts.

Range shifts, the movement of species' geographic distributions in response to climate change, are one of the most observable bio-geographic responses to global warming. These shifts are often a direct response to changes in temperature and precipitation, as well as the altered availability of suitable habitats. Some species may expand their ranges into new areas,

while others may contract or even disappear from parts of their historical range. These shifts can lead to novel species interactions, competition, and changes in ecosystem structure and function. However, the ability of species to move and establish in new areas depends on a variety of factors, including their dispersal capabilities, the availability of corridors for movement, and the presence of suitable habitats in new areas.

The biogeographic shifts driven by climate change pose significant challenges for conservation efforts. Traditional conservation strategies, such as protecting specific areas or maintaining historical ecosystems, may no longer be effective as species move and ecosystems change. Conservationists are now focusing on adaptive strategies that account for these dynamic changes. This includes creating and maintaining ecological corridors to facilitate species movement, prioritizing the conservation of climate refugia—areas that are expected to remain relatively stable in the face of climate change—and employing assisted migration for species that cannot move quickly enough on their own. Additionally, there is a growing emphasis on building resilience in ecosystems by maintaining genetic diversity, restoring degraded habitats, and reducing other human pressures on the environment. These strategies are essential for ensuring that biodiversity can persist and thrive in a rapidly changing climate.

7.3 BIOGEOGRAPHY OF CLIMATE CHANGE, CLIMATE CHANGE IMPACTS ON SPECIES DISTRIBUTIONS, RANGE SHIFTS AND BIO-GEOGRAPHIC RESPONSES, CONSERVATION IMPLICATIONS AND ADAPTATION STRATEGIES

7.3.1 BIOGEOGRAPHY OF CLIMATE CHANGE-

Biogeography is the study of the distribution of species and ecosystems across geographic space and through time. This field of science seeks to understand the processes that result in the diversity of life across the Earth, including factors like historical climate patterns, plate tectonics, and evolutionary history. Traditionally, biogeography focused on relatively stable conditions, assuming that the environment of a given region would remain more or less constant over time. However, climate change has introduced a new dynamic element to

biogeographic studies, as the environment is now changing rapidly and unpredictably, forcing species and ecosystems to respond in real time.

Climate change is now recognized as one of the most significant drivers of biogeographic change. Global warming, in particular, is altering the thermal landscapes that species have evolved to live within. For many species, the climate is a critical factor that determines their distribution. For example, temperature and precipitation patterns define the types of vegetation that can grow in an area, which in turn affects the animals that can live there.

As global temperatures rise, the optimal habitats for many species are shifting. For example, species adapted to cooler climates, such as those in Polar Regions or mountainous areas, are finding their habitats shrinking as temperatures rise. These species are often forced to migrate to higher latitudes or altitudes in search of suitable conditions. However, this migration is not always possible; some species may face geographic barriers or a lack of suitable habitat at higher elevations or latitudes, leading to population declines or even extinction.

Range Shifts and Species Migration

One of the most direct effects of climate change on biogeography is the phenomenon of range shifts. As climatic conditions change, species are moving their ranges to track their preferred environmental conditions. These shifts can occur in several ways:

- Latitudinal Shifts: Species move towards the poles as temperatures increase. For instance, many terrestrial and marine species are expanding their ranges northward in the Northern Hemisphere.
- Altitudinal Shifts: In mountainous regions, species are moving to higher elevations where temperatures are cooler.
- Longitudinal Shifts: Some species may also shift eastward or westward to track changes in precipitation patterns or to find suitable microclimates.

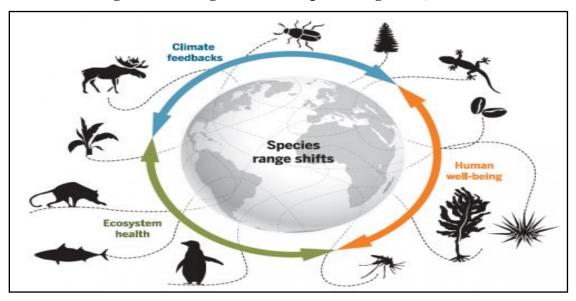


Fig. No. 7.1 Range Shifts and Species Migration, Source:

Google Image

These range shifts are not uniform across all species. The ability of a species to move its range depends on factors such as its dispersal ability, life history traits, and the availability of corridors that connect current habitats with potential new habitats. Species with limited dispersal abilities, such as plants or flightless animals, may struggle to keep pace with the changing climate. This leads to concerns about "climate-induced extinctions," where species are unable to find suitable new habitats and thus face extinction.

7.3.2 CLIMATE CHANGE IMPACTS ON SPECIES DISTRIBUTIONS

Climate change is reshaping species distributions on a global scale, with profound implications for biodiversity, ecosystems, and human well-being. The shifts in species ranges, driven by changing temperatures, altered precipitation patterns, and other climate-related factors, are challenging the resilience of ecosystems and the effectiveness of traditional conservation strategies. To mitigate the impacts of these changes, conservation efforts must adapt to the dynamic nature of species distributions, focusing on maintaining ecological connectivity, protecting climate refugia, and supporting the resilience of ecosystems in the face of ongoing climate change.

Climate change is profoundly affecting the distribution of species across the globe, leading to shifts in habitats, changes in ecosystem dynamics, and even local extinctions. As global temperatures rise, precipitation patterns change and extreme weather events become more frequent, the geographic ranges of many species are shifting. These shifts can be observed across various ecosystems, from terrestrial to marine environments, and involve a wide range of organisms, including plants, animals, and microorganisms.

Latitudinal and Altitudinal Shifts

One of the most significant impacts of climate change on species distributions is the movement of species toward the poles (latitudinal shifts) and to higher elevations (altitudinal shifts) in search of cooler environments. This phenomenon has been well-documented in numerous studies.

For instance, Parmesan and Yohe (2003) conducted a meta-analysis of 1,700 species and found that, on average, species have shifted their ranges poleward by 6.1 km per decade and upward in elevation by 6.1 meters per decade. This shift is particularly evident in temperate regions, where warming is most pronounced. In Europe, Thomas et al. (2006) observed that butterflies have shifted their ranges northward by as much as 200 km over the past few decades in response to rising temperatures.

Marine species are also experiencing similar shifts. Perry et al. (2005) found that fish in the North Sea are moving northward by approximately 50 km per decade as the sea temperature increases. These shifts are not uniform across all species; those with narrow ecological niches or specialized habitat requirements are particularly vulnerable, as they may not find suitable conditions in new areas.

Changes in Habitat Availability and Quality

Climate change is also altering the availability and quality of habitats, leading to changes in species distributions. Changes in precipitation patterns, for example, are causing deserts to expand into previously fertile areas, while forest ecosystems may contract or shift to higher altitudes or latitudes.

In the Amazon rainforest, models predict significant changes in species distributions due to altered rainfall patterns. Some studies suggest that up to 43% of the Amazon's tree species could experience severe habitat loss by 2100 if current climate trends continue (Malhi et al., 2008). In North America, Matthews et al. (2004) projected that the distribution of tree species would shift northward, with some species like the sugar maple potentially disappearing from the southern parts of its current range.

Range Contractions and Local Extinctions

Not all species are capable of shifting their ranges in response to climate change. Species with limited dispersal abilities, those confined to isolated habitats, or those with specialized ecological requirements are at particular risk. For these species, climate change can lead to range contractions and, in some cases, local or even global extinctions.

A well-known example is the American pika (Ochotona princeps), a small mammal that inhabits mountainous regions in western North America. Research has shown that pikas are highly sensitive to temperature changes, and as the climate warms, they retreat to higher elevations where cooler conditions persist. However, in many areas, suitable habitat is limited, leading to local extinctions (Beever et al., 2011).

Another example is the golden toad (Incilius perigones) of Costa Rica, which is believed to have gone extinct in the 1980s, likely due to a combination of climate change and disease. The cloud forests that the golden toad inhabited have experienced significant warming and drying, which contributed to the decline of this species (Pounds et al., 2006).

Phenological Mismatches and Disruption of Ecological Interactions

Climate change is also affecting the timing of biological events, known as phenology. As temperatures rise, many species are shifting the timing of activities such as flowering, breeding, and migration. These changes can lead to phenological mismatches—situations where the timing of interdependent species becomes misaligned.

For example, Visser and Both (2005) documented that some European bird species, such as the great tit (Parus major), are breeding earlier in response to earlier spring

temperatures. However, the availability of their primary food source, caterpillars, has not advanced at the same rate, leading to a mismatch that can reduce reproductive success.

In aquatic ecosystems, coral bleaching is another example of how climate change disrupts ecological interactions. Rising sea temperatures cause corals to expel the symbiotic algae that live within their tissues, leading to bleaching. This disrupts the entire coral reef ecosystem, affecting species that depend on coral reefs for habitat and food (Hoegh-Guldberg et al., 2007).

Implications for Biodiversity and Ecosystem Services

The redistribution of species due to climate change has significant implications for biodiversity and the functioning of ecosystems. As species move or decline, the composition of ecological communities changes, which can alter ecosystem processes and the services they provide to humans.

For instance, shifts in plant species distributions can affect carbon sequestration, water regulation, and soil stability. In the Arctic, the encroachment of shrubs into tundra regions due to warming temperatures is altering carbon and nitrogen cycling, with potential feedback to the global climate system (Sturm et al., 2001).

Moreover, the loss of keystone species—species that have a disproportionately large effect on their environment—can lead to cascading effects throughout an ecosystem. For example, the decline of sea otters due to climate change and other factors has led to the overgrazing of kelp forests by sea urchins, resulting in the loss of these important marine habitats (Estes et al., 2011).

Conservation Challenges and Adaptive Strategies

The shifts in species distributions pose significant challenges for conservation. Traditional conservation strategies, such as establishing protected areas based on historical species distributions, may no longer be sufficient in a changing climate. Conservationists are increasingly focusing on adaptive strategies that account for the dynamic nature of species distributions.

These strategies include:

Creating ecological corridors: To facilitate species movement and migration across fragmented landscapes.

Prioritizing climate refugia: Protecting areas that are expected to remain relatively stable despite climate change.

Assisted migration: Relocating species to more suitable habitats outside their current range, though this approach is controversial and must be carefully managed to avoid unintended ecological consequences.

7.3.3 CLIMATE CHANGE IMPACTS ON RANGE SHIFTS AND BIO-GEOGRAPHIC RESPONSES

Climate change is driving significant shifts in species' geographic ranges, leading to widespread biogeographic responses that are reshaping ecosystems across the globe. These range shifts are resulting in new species interactions, changes in community composition, and the formation of novel ecosystems. Conservation efforts must adapt to these changes by focusing on maintaining ecological connectivity, protecting climate refugia, and exploring innovative strategies such as assisted migration. Understanding and managing these biogeographic responses is critical for preserving biodiversity and maintaining ecosystem resilience in a rapidly changing world.

Climate change is driving significant shifts in the geographic ranges of species, leading to widespread biogeographic responses across the globe. These changes are a direct result of alterations in temperature, precipitation patterns, and the frequency of extreme weather events, which in turn affect the availability of suitable habitats for various species. As the climate continues to change, understanding these range shifts and biogeographic responses is crucial for biodiversity conservation and ecosystem management.

Range Shifts: A Global Phenomenon

Range shifts refer to the movement of species' geographic distributions in response to changing environmental conditions. These shifts are often a strategy for survival, as species seek out new areas where the climate is more conducive to their ecological needs.

Latitudinal Range Shifts

One of the most documented types of range shifts involves the movement of species toward the poles, known as latitudinal shifts. As global temperatures rise, species that are adapted to cooler climates are moving northward in the Northern Hemisphere and southward in the Southern Hemisphere.

For example, a study by Parmesan and Yohe (2003) analyzed data from multiple studies and found that, on average, species are shifting their ranges poleward by approximately 6.1 km per decade. This pattern is particularly evident in temperate regions, where warming is most pronounced. In North America, studies have shown that bird species, such as the red-breasted nuthatch (Sitta canadensis), have expanded their ranges northward in response to warming temperatures (Hitch and Leberg, 2007).

Altitudinal Range Shifts

In mountainous regions, species are also shifting their ranges to higher elevations, known as altitudinal shifts, to escape the rising temperatures at lower altitudes. A well-known example is the American pika (Ochotona princeps), a small mammal that inhabits rocky slopes in western North America. Pikas are highly sensitive to temperature changes and have been observed moving to higher elevations as their traditional habitats become too warm (Beever et al., 2011). However, this shift is limited by the availability of suitable habitats at higher altitudes, leading to concerns about the species' long-term survival.

In the European Alps, studies have documented similar upward shifts in plant species. For instance, Pauli et al. (2012) found that alpine plants have been moving to higher elevations, with some species advancing their upper range limits by up to 4 meters per decade in response to warming temperatures. These shifts are leading to changes in the composition of plant communities at different elevations.

Marine Range Shifts

Marine species are also experiencing significant range shifts in response to ocean warming. As sea temperatures rise, many marine organisms, including fish, plankton, and invertebrates, are moving toward the poles or into deeper waters to find suitable thermal conditions.

For example, Perry et al. (2005) reported that fish species in the North Sea have been shifting their distributions northward by an average of 50 km per decade as sea temperatures have increased. This movement is altering the composition of marine communities, with potential consequences for fisheries and marine ecosystems.

Biogeographic Responses: Changes in Species Interactions and Community Composition

The range shifts driven by climate change are leading to biogeographic responses that affect not only individual species but also entire ecological communities. These responses include changes in species interactions, community composition, and ecosystem dynamics.

Changes in Species Interactions

As species move into new areas, they encounter different species and new environmental conditions, leading to changes in species interactions such as competition, predation, and symbiosis. These new interactions can have cascading effects throughout ecosystems.

For example, the northward shift of some predator species, such as the red fox (Vulpes vulpes), into the Arctic has led to increased competition with native species like the Arctic fox (Vulpes lagopus). This competition can negatively impact the Arctic fox population, as the red fox is larger and more aggressive.

In marine ecosystems, the poleward movement of species like the European lobster (Homarus gammarus) has led to changes in predator-prey dynamics and competition with other crustaceans, potentially altering the structure of benthic communities.

Changes in Community Composition

As species shift their ranges, the composition of ecological communities is changing. These changes can lead to the formation of novel communities, where species that have not previously coexisted are now found together. This can disrupt existing ecological processes and lead to unexpected outcomes.

For instance, in the European Alps, the upward movement of alpine plants is leading to the mixing of species from different elevational zones, resulting in new plant communities that may not have analogues in the current climate (Pauli et al., 2012). These novel communities could alter nutrient cycling, water regulation, and other ecosystem functions.

In the ocean, the northward shift of fish species like Atlantic cod (Gadus morhua) is leading to changes in community composition in the Barents Sea, where cold-water species are being replaced by more temperate species (Fossheim et al., 2015). This shift is affecting the food web dynamics and the functioning of the marine ecosystem.

Conservation Challenges

One of the key challenges is maintaining ecological connectivity to allow species to migrate to new areas. Fragmented landscapes and human-made barriers, such as roads and urban areas, can hinder the movement of species, making it difficult for them to track suitable habitats.

Another challenge is the uncertainty associated with predicting future species distributions. Climate models can provide general projections, but there is considerable uncertainty about how species will respond to specific changes in temperature, precipitation, and other environmental factors.

Adaptive Conservation Strategies

To address these challenges, conservationists are increasingly adopting adaptive strategies that account for the dynamic nature of species distributions. These strategies include:

Creating ecological corridors: Establishing and maintaining corridors that connect fragmented habitats can facilitate species movement and migration. For example, the Yellowstone to Yukon Conservation Initiative aims to create a connected landscape that allows species to move freely in response to climate change (Hilty et al., 2020).

Prioritizing climate refugia: Identifying and protecting areas that are expected to remain relatively stable despite climate change—known as climate refugia—can help preserve species that are at risk of losing their habitats. For instance, cool, moist microhabitats in mountainous regions can serve as refugia for species that are sensitive to warming temperatures.

Assisted migration: In some cases, conservationists are considering assisted migration, where species are deliberately relocated to new areas outside their current range that are expected to become suitable in the future. This approach is controversial and must be carefully managed to avoid unintended ecological consequences, such as the introduction of invasive species.

7.3.4 BIOGEOGRAPHY OF CLIMATE CHANGE: CONSERVATION IMPLICATIONS AND ADAPTATION STRATEGIES

The biogeography of climate change presents significant challenges for conservation, as species and ecosystems are forced to adapt to rapidly changing conditions. However, by implementing adaptive strategies such as enhancing ecological connectivity, protecting climate refugia, considering assisted migration, and adopting dynamic conservation planning, we can help mitigate the impacts of climate change on biodiversity. As the climate continues to change, ongoing research and collaboration will be essential for developing and refining these strategies to ensure the long-term conservation of the world's species and ecosystems.

The biogeography of climate change refers to the study of how climate change affects the distribution of species and ecosystems across geographic areas. As global temperatures rise, precipitation patterns shift and extreme weather events become more common, the natural distribution of species is being altered in unprecedented ways. These changes pose significant challenges for conservation, necessitating the development and implementation of adaptive strategies to preserve biodiversity and ecosystem services.

Conservation Implications of Climate-Induced Range Shifts

Climate change is causing species to move to new areas where the climate is more suitable for their survival. These movements, known as range shifts, are often poleward or upward in elevation as species track their preferred temperature regimes. While range shifts are a natural response to changing environmental conditions, the speed and magnitude of current climate change are unprecedented, leading to profound implications for conservation.

1. Disruption of Ecological Networks

As species move to new areas, ecological networks—the complex web of interactions between species, such as predation, competition, and mutualism—are disrupted. This can lead to the breakdown of existing ecosystems and the formation of novel ecosystems, where species that have not previously coexisted are now found together. For example, the northward movement of some predator species, such as the red fox (Vulpes vulpes), into the Arctic is disrupting the established predator-prey dynamics, leading to declines in native species like the Arctic fox (Vulpes lagopus) (Gallant et al., 2012).

2. Loss of Biodiversity

Species that are unable to move or adapt quickly enough to changing conditions are at risk of extinction. Biodiversity loss is particularly concerning for species with narrow ecological niches, limited dispersal abilities, or those confined to isolated habitats, such as mountaintops or islands. For instance, the American pika (Ochotona princeps) is experiencing local extinctions in some parts of its range due to rising temperatures that exceed its thermal tolerance (Beever et al., 2011). The loss of such species can lead to cascading effects throughout ecosystems, as they may play critical roles in their environments.

3. Fragmentation and Habitat Loss

Climate change can exacerbate habitat fragmentation by altering the distribution and availability of suitable habitats. As species move in response to climate change, they may encounter human-made barriers such as roads, cities, and agricultural lands, which can prevent them from reaching new suitable habitats. This fragmentation can reduce genetic diversity, limit the ability of species to adapt to changing conditions and increase the risk of local extinctions (Heller and Zavaleta, 2009).

Adaptation Strategies for Conservation

Given the profound impacts of climate change on biogeography, conservationists are developing and implementing a range of adaptation strategies to help species and ecosystems cope with the changes. These strategies focus on enhancing the resilience of ecosystems, facilitating species movement, and planning for future climate scenarios.

1. Enhancing Ecological Connectivity

One of the key strategies for adapting to climate-induced range shifts is enhancing ecological connectivity—the ability of species to move across the landscape to track suitable habitats. This can be achieved through the creation of ecological corridors and networks of protected areas that connect fragmented habitats. For example, the Yellowstone to Yukon Conservation Initiative aims to create a continuous network of protected areas and wildlife corridors that allow species to move freely across the landscape in response to climate change (Hilty et al., 2020). By maintaining connectivity, this initiative helps ensure that species can migrate to new areas as their current habitats become unsuitable due to climate change.

2. Protecting Climate Refugia

Climate refugia are areas that are expected to remain relatively stable despite climate change, providing a refuge for species that are vulnerable to changing conditions. Identifying and protecting these areas is a critical adaptation strategy for conserving biodiversity.

For instance, cool, moist microhabitats in mountainous regions can serve as refugia for species that are sensitive to warming temperatures, such as alpine plants and cold-adapted animals. Protecting these areas from development and other human activities can help preserve species that might otherwise be at risk of extinction (Morelli et al., 2016).

3. Assisted Migration

In cases where natural migration is not possible due to barriers or the rapid pace of climate change, conservationists are considering assisted migration—the deliberate relocation of species to new areas where the climate is expected to become suitable in the future. This strategy is controversial and must be carefully managed to avoid unintended ecological consequences, such as the introduction of invasive species or the disruption of existing ecosystems.

A well-known example of assisted migration is the relocation of the endangered Torreya taxifolia, a tree species native to the southeastern United States, to more northerly locations where the climate is expected to be more suitable in the future (Schwartz et al., 2012). While this approach offers potential benefits, it also requires careful consideration of the risks and long-term monitoring to ensure the success of the relocated populations.

4. Dynamic Conservation Planning

Given the uncertainty associated with predicting future climate conditions and species responses, conservationists are increasingly adopting dynamic conservation planning—an approach that is flexible and can be adjusted as new information becomes available. This involves using climate models and species distribution models to identify areas that are likely to remain suitable for conservation in the future and adjusting conservation priorities and actions accordingly.

For example, conservationists might prioritize protecting areas that are projected to serve as future habitats for a wide range of species under different climate scenarios, ensuring that these areas remain available as species' ranges shift. This approach allows for adaptive management, where conservation strategies can be updated as new data on climate change and species distributions become available (Game et al., 2011).

Challenges and Future Directions

While these adaptation strategies offer promising ways to mitigate the impacts of climate change on biodiversity, they also come with challenges. Uncertainty in climate projections, limited resources, and competing land-use priorities can all hinder the implementation of effective conservation strategies. Additionally, the rapid pace of climate change may outstrip the ability of species and ecosystems to adapt, leading to irreversible losses of biodiversity.

To address these challenges, it is essential to continue investing in research that improves our understanding of how species and ecosystems respond to climate change. This includes refining climate models, monitoring species distributions, and developing innovative conservation techniques. Collaboration between scientists, policymakers, and local communities will also be crucial for ensuring that conservation efforts are effective and sustainable in the face of ongoing climate change.

7.4 SUMMARY

Biogeography of climate change examines how climate change influences the distribution of species and ecosystems across the globe. As temperatures rise, precipitation patterns shift and extreme weather events become more frequent, species are forced to adapt by shifting their geographic ranges. This can lead to significant changes in where species are found, altering ecosystems and disrupting established ecological networks.

Climate change impacts on species distributions are profound and far-reaching. Species are moving toward the poles or to higher elevations in search of suitable habitats. For instance, many plants and animals in the Northern Hemisphere are shifting their ranges northward as temperatures increase. These movements, while a natural response to environmental changes are occurring at an unprecedented pace due to the rapid progression of climate change. This poses serious challenges to species that cannot move quickly enough, leading to potential declines or even extinctions.

Range shifts and biogeographic responses to climate change are not uniform and vary greatly depending on the species and the specific environmental changes they face. Some species are experiencing latitudinal shifts, moving toward the poles, while others are shifting to higher altitudes. These shifts can lead to the formation of novel ecosystems, where species that have not previously coexisted are now found together. This can disrupt existing ecological processes and lead to unexpected consequences, such as changes in species interactions and community composition.

The conservation implications of these biogeographic changes are significant. Traditional conservation strategies, such as the establishment of protected areas based on historical species distributions, may no longer be sufficient. As species move in response to climate change, maintaining ecological connectivity becomes critical to allow species to migrate to new areas. Additionally, identifying and protecting climate refugia—areas that are expected to remain stable despite climate change—is essential for preserving biodiversity. In some cases, assisted migration may be considered, where species are deliberately relocated to areas where the climate is expected to become suitable in the future.

Adaptation strategies for conservation in the face of climate change include enhancing ecological connectivity, protecting climate refugia, and adopting dynamic conservation planning. These strategies require a flexible approach that can be adjusted as new information becomes available. They also involve collaboration between scientists, policymakers, and local communities to ensure that conservation efforts are effective and sustainable. As the impacts of climate change continue to unfold, ongoing research and innovation will be crucial for developing and refining these strategies to safeguard the world's biodiversity and ecosystems.

7.5 GLOSSARY

Biogeography: The scientific study of the distribution of species, organisms, and ecosystems in geographic space and over geological time.

Climate Change: A long-term alteration in Earth's climate patterns, particularly increases in temperature and changes in precipitation, largely due to human activities like burning fossil fuels.

Species Distribution: The geographic area where a particular species can be found, determined by environmental factors, species interactions, and climate conditions.

Range Shift: The movement of a species' geographical range in response to environmental changes, including shifts toward the poles or higher altitudes due to warming temperatures.

Ecological Connectivity: The extent to which different habitats or ecosystems are connected, allowing for the movement of species and the maintenance of ecological processes.

Climate Refugia: Locations that remain relatively unaffected by climate change and serve as safe havens for species, providing stable conditions for survival.

Assisted Migration: A conservation strategy where species are intentionally relocated to areas expected to be more suitable under future climate conditions.

Novel Ecosystems: New ecological communities that arise when species are forced into new geographic areas due to climate change, leading to unique assemblages of species.

Biodiversity: The variety of life on Earth, including the diversity of species, ecosystems, and genetic variation within species, essential for ecosystem resilience.

Adaptive Management: A dynamic approach to managing natural resources that involves adjusting strategies based on ongoing monitoring and feedback.

Phenology: The study of the timing of natural events, such as flowering or migration, often affected by climate change, leading to mismatches between species and their environment.

Microclimate: Local climate conditions that can differ from the surrounding area, potentially providing refuge for species in a changing climate.

Tipping Point: A critical threshold at which a small change in environmental conditions can lead to drastic and irreversible changes in an ecosystem or species distribution.

Resilience: The ability of an ecosystem or species to withstand and recover from disturbances, including those induced by climate change.

Conservation Corridors: Strips of natural habitat that connect separate populations, allowing species to move between them and adapt to environmental changes.

7.6 ANSWER TO THE CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. What is the primary cause of the current shifts in species distributions?

- A) Volcanic activity
- B) Climate change
- C) Ocean currents
- D) Plate tectonics

Answer: B) Climate change

- 2. Which term describes the movement of a species' geographical range in response to climate change?
- A) Speciation
- B) Migration
- C) Range shift
- D) Extinction

Answer: C) Range shift

3. What are climate refugia?

- A) Areas that are highly vulnerable to climate change
- B) Areas that remain stable despite climate change, providing safe havens for species
- C) Areas that are artificially created to house species
- D) None of the above

UNIT- 7 BIOGEOGRAPHY OF CLIMATE CHANGE, CLIMATE CHANGE IMPACTS ON SPECIES DISTRIBUTIONS, RANGE SHIFTS AND BIO-GEOGRAPHIC RESPONSES, CONSERVATION IMPLICATIONS AND ADAPTATION STRATEGIES Page: 162

- Answer: B) Areas that remain stable despite climate change, providing safe havens for species
- 4. Which strategy involves the intentional relocation of species to areas where the climate is expected to be suitable in the future?
- A) Ecological connectivity
- B) Assisted migration
- C) Phenological adjustment
- D) In-situ conservation

Answer: B) Assisted migration

5. How are novel ecosystems formed?

- A) By introducing non-native species to new areas
- B) Through the natural adaptation of species to stable climates
- C) When species shift their ranges due to climate change and create new species assemblages
- D) By human intervention in habitat restoration

Answer: C) When species shift their ranges due to climate change and create new species assemblages

6. What is the goal of conservation corridors?

- A) To isolate species to prevent disease spread
- B) To connect fragmented habitats, allowing species to migrate and adapt
- C) To serve as a tourist attraction
- D) To restrict species movement to prevent overpopulation

Answer: B) To connect fragmented habitats, allowing species to migrate and adapt

7. What is adaptive management in the context of conservation?

- A) A one-time strategy set in place for species conservation
- B) A dynamic approach that adjusts strategies based on monitoring and feedback
- C) A method that avoids any changes in conservation practices
- D) A rigid plan that does not consider environmental changes
- Answer: B) A dynamic approach that adjusts strategies based on monitoring and feedback
- 8. Which of the following is a consequence of disrupted ecological networks due to climate-induced range shifts?
- A) Increased genetic diversity
- B) Enhanced ecosystem stability
- C) Breakdown of established predator-prey relationships
- D) No impact on ecosystems

Answer: C) Breakdown of established predator-prey relationships

9. What term describes the study of the timing of natural events, often impacted by climate change?

- A) Chronobiology
- B) Phenology
- C) Ecology
- D) Taxonomy

Answer: B) Phenology

10. Which concept refers to the ability of an ecosystem or species to recover from disturbances, including those induced by climate change?

A) Resilience

B) Resistance

C) Sustainability

D) Vulnerability

Answer: A) Resilience

7.7 REFERENCES

- Beever, E. A., Ray, C., Wilkening, J. L., Brussard, P. F., & Mote, P. W. (2011). Contemporary climate change alters the pace and drivers of extinction. Global Change Biology, 17(6), 2054-2070.
- Gallant, D., Slough, B. G., Reid, D. G., & Berteaux, D. (2012). Arctic fox versus red fox in the warming Arctic: four decades of den surveys in north Yukon. Polar Biology, 35(9), 1421-1431.
- Game, E. T., Lipsett-Moore, G., Saxon, E., Peterson, N., & Sheppard, S. (2011). Incorporating climate change adaptation into national conservation assessments. Global Change Biology, 17(10), 3150-3160.
- Heller, N. E., & Zavaleta, E. S. (2009). Biodiversity management in the face of climate change: A review of 22 years of recommendations. Biological Conservation, 142(1), 14-32.
- Hilty, J. A., Worboys, G. L., Keeley, A., Woodley, S., Lausche, B. J., Locke, H., ... & Tabor, G. M. (2020). Guidelines for conserving connectivity through ecological networks and corridors. IUCN.
- Morelli, T. L., Daly, C., Dobrowski, S. Z., Dulen, D. M., Ebersole, J. L., Jackson, S. T., ... & Rissler, L. J. (2016). Managing climate change refugia for climate adaptation. PLOS ONE, 11(8), e0159909.

- Schwartz, M. W., Hellmann, J. J., McLachlan, J. M., Sax, D. F., Borevitz, J. O., Brennan, J., ... & Williams, J. W. (2012). Managed relocation: integrating the scientific, regulatory, and ethical challenges. BioScience, 62(8), 732-743
- Fossheim, M., Primicerio, R., Johannesen, E., Ingvaldsen, R. B., Aschan, M. M., & Dolgov, A. V. (2015). Recent warming leads to a rapid borealization of fish communities in the Arctic. Nature Climate Change, 5(7), 673-677.
- Hitch, A. T., & Leberg, P. L. (2007). Breeding distributions of North American bird species moving north as a result of climate change. Conservation Biology, 21(2), 534-539.
- Pauli, H., Gottfried, M., Reiter, K., Klettner, C., & Grabherr, G. (2012). Signals of range expansions and contractions of vascular plants in the high Alps: observations (1994–2004) at the GLORIA* master site Schrankogel, Tyrol, Austria. Global Change Biology, 18(2), 562-572.
- Parmesan, C., & Yohe, G. (2003). A globally coherent fingerprint of climate change impacts across natural systems. Nature, 421(6918), 37-42
- Estes, J. A., Tinker, M. T., Williams, T. M., & Doak, D. F. (2011). Causes and consequences of sea otter population declines in the Aleutian Archipelago. The Mammal Review, 36(3), 127-147.
- Hannah, L., Midgley, G. F., & Millar, D. (2002). Climate change-integrated conservation strategies. Global Ecology and Biogeography, 11(6), 485-495.
- Hoegh-Guldberg, O., Mumby, P. J., Hooten, A. J., Steneck, R. S., Greenfield, P., Gomez, E., ... & Knowlton, N. (2007). Coral reefs under rapid climate change and ocean acidification. Science, 318(5857), 1737-1742.
- Parmesan, C., & Yohe, G. (2003). A globally coherent fingerprint of climate change impacts across natural systems. Nature, 421(6918), 37-42.
- Perry, A. L., Low, P. J., Ellis, J. R., & Reynolds, J. D. (2005). Climate change and distribution shifts in marine fishes. Science, 308(5730), 1912-1915.
- Pounds, J. A., Bustamante, M. R., Coloma, L. A., Consuegra, J. A., Fogden, M. P., Foster, P. N., ... & Young, B. E. (2006). Widespread amphibian extinctions from epidemic disease driven by global warming. Nature, 439(7073), 161-167.

7.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

- 1. Explain how climate change affects species distributions and what factors contribute to range shifts.
- 2. Discuss the concept of climate refugia and its importance in conservation strategies under climate change.
- 3. Analyze the potential ecological consequences of species range shifts caused by climate change, focusing on disruptions to existing ecosystems.
- 4. Evaluate the role of assisted migration as a conservation strategy in the context of climate change, including its potential benefits and risks.
- 5. How do novel ecosystems form in response to climate change, and what challenges do they present for traditional conservation approaches?
- 6. Describe the importance of ecological connectivity in enabling species adaptation to climate change. Provide examples of how conservation corridors can support this connectivity.
- 7. Critically assess the limitations of traditional conservation methods in the face of rapid climate-induced changes in species distributions.
- 8. Examine the role of adaptive management in conservation planning, particularly in addressing the uncertainties associated with climate change.
- 9. What are the implications of phenological changes due to climate change on species interactions and ecosystem functioning?
- 10. Discuss how conservation strategies can be designed to enhance ecosystem resilience in the face of climate change, focusing on both short-term and long-term approaches.

BLOCK 3: ANTHROPOGENIC BIO-GEOGRAPHY AND CONSERVATION

UNIT-8: HUMAN IMPACTS ON BIO-GEOGRAPHIC PATTERNS, HABITAT FRAGMENTATION AND LANDSCAPE CONNECTIVITY

8.1 OBJECTIVE

8.2 INTRODUCTION

8.3 HUMAN IMPACTS ON BIO-GEOGRAPHIC PATTERNS, HABITAT FRAGMENTATION AND LANDSCAPE CONNECTIVITY.

8.3.1 HUMAN IMPACT ON BIOGEOGRAPHIC PATTERNS

8.3.2 HABITAT FRAGMENTATION

8.3.3 LANDSCAPE CONNECTIVITY

8.4 SUMMARY

8.5 GLOSSARY

8.6 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

8.7 REFERENCES

8.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

8.1 OBJECTIVE

- Understanding the human impact on biogeographic patterns.
- Learn about Habitat fragmentation.
- Gain knowledge about Landscape connectivity.

8.2 INTRODUCTION

Human activities have profoundly altered biogeographic patterns, reshaping the distribution and diversity of species across the globe. These changes are largely driven by urbanization, agriculture, deforestation, and industrialization, which disrupt natural habitats and create novel environments. As human populations grow and expand, the pressure on natural landscapes intensifies, leading to significant modifications in habitat structure and function. These alterations have cascading effects on biodiversity, ecosystem services, and the resilience of natural systems. The consequences of these changes are complex and multifaceted, influencing species distribution, genetic diversity, and ecological interactions.

Habitat fragmentation is one of the most critical impacts of human activities on natural landscapes. Fragmentation occurs when large, contiguous habitats are divided into smaller, isolated patches due to the construction of roads, agricultural fields, urban developments, and other infrastructures. This process not only reduces the total area of habitat available for wildlife but also increases edge effects, where the boundaries of habitat patches are more exposed to external influences such as pollution, invasive species, and human disturbances. Fragmentation can lead to the decline of species that require large, uninterrupted territories for feeding, mating, and migration, and it often disrupts ecological processes such as seed dispersal and pollination.

Landscape connectivity, or the degree to which different habitat patches are connected and allow for the movement of species, is crucial for maintaining ecological integrity and biodiversity. Connectivity facilitates gene flow, enables species to find resources and mates, and allows for the recolonization of areas following disturbances. In fragmented landscapes, connectivity is often compromised, leading to isolated populations that are more vulnerable to inbreeding, local extinctions, and environmental changes. Conservation strategies increasingly focus on enhancing connectivity through the creation of wildlife corridors, buffer zones, and green infrastructure to mitigate the adverse effects of fragmentation. By promoting landscape connectivity, it is possible to support more resilient ecosystems that can better withstand the pressures of human activities and climate change.

8.3 HUMAN IMPACTS ON BIO-GEOGRAPHIC PATTERNS, HABITAT FRAGMENTATION AND LANDSCAPE CONNECTIVITY 8.3.1 HUMAN IMPACTS ON BIOGEOGRAPHIC PATTERNS

Human activities have significantly altered biogeographic patterns, reshaping the distribution and diversity of species across the globe. These changes are primarily driven by urbanization, agriculture, deforestation, and industrialization. Each of these factors contributes to habitat loss, fragmentation, and degradation, affecting species' ability to survive and thrive in their natural environments.

Urbanization

Urbanization, the process by which rural areas are transformed into urban ones, has profound impacts on biogeographic patterns. This transformation involves the construction of buildings, roads, and other infrastructure, leading to significant changes in the landscape and ecosystem. Urbanization results in habitat destruction, fragmentation, and alteration, which profoundly affect the distribution and diversity of species.

Habitat Destruction

One of the most immediate and visible impacts of urbanization is habitat destruction. Natural habitats such as forests, wetlands, and grasslands are cleared to make way for urban infrastructure. This leads to the complete loss of habitats that many species depend on for survival. For instance, urban expansion in many parts of the world has led to the destruction of critical habitats for numerous plant and animal species, resulting in population declines and, in some cases, local extinctions. A study highlighted that urban development is one of the leading causes of habitat loss globally, particularly affecting regions with high biodiversity.

Fig. 8.1 Habitat Destruction



Source-Google Image

Habitat Fragmentation

Urbanization also leads to habitat fragmentation, where large, contiguous habitats are divided into smaller, isolated patches. Roads, buildings, and other urban structures act as barriers that prevent the free movement of wildlife. Fragmented habitats can create "islands" of biodiversity, which are often too small to support viable populations of certain species. This fragmentation can disrupt migration routes, breeding patterns, and access to resources. For example, urban sprawl in the United States has fragmented forest habitats, severely affecting species like the American black bear and the Florida panther.

Agriculture

Agriculture has had a profound impact on biogeographic patterns, reshaping ecosystems and influencing species distributions across the globe. The conversion of natural landscapes into agricultural lands, the intensification of farming practices, and the introduction of monocultures have led to significant changes in biodiversity and ecosystem function. These changes are driven by habitat destruction, fragmentation, and degradation, as well as pollution and the introduction of non-native species.



Fig. 8.2 An example: Agriculture has had a profound impact on biogeographic patterns

Source Google Image

Habitat Destruction

The conversion of forests, grasslands, and wetlands into agricultural fields is one of the most significant drivers of habitat destruction. Large areas of natural habitats are cleared to make way for crops and livestock, resulting in the loss of biodiversity. For example, the expansion of agricultural land in tropical regions has led to extensive deforestation, particularly in the Amazon rainforest, which is home to a vast array of plant and animal species. The loss of these habitats reduces the available space for wildlife, leading to population declines and, in some cases, species extinctions. A study by Laurance et al. (2014) highlights the severe impact of agricultural expansion on tropical forests and their biodiversity.

Habitat Fragmentation

Agricultural development often leads to habitat fragmentation, where large, contiguous areas of natural habitat are broken into smaller, isolated patches. This fragmentation creates barriers to species movement and gene flow, making it difficult for wildlife to find food, mates, and suitable habitats. Fragmented landscapes can lead to the isolation of populations, increasing the risk of inbreeding and reducing genetic diversity. For example, in North America, the fragmentation of prairie habitats due to agricultural expansion has significantly impacted species such as the Greater Prairie Chicken, which requires large, contiguous grasslands for its survival.

Deforestation

Deforestation, the large-scale removal of forests, significantly impacts biogeographic patterns by altering the distribution, abundance, and diversity of species. This process, driven by logging, agricultural expansion, urban development, and other human activities, leads to habitat loss, fragmentation, and degradation. The consequences of deforestation are far-reaching, affecting not only local ecosystems but also global climate patterns and biogeochemical cycles.

Habitat Loss

Deforestation results in the complete removal of forested habitats, leading to the displacement of countless plant and animal species. Forests are among the most biodiverse ecosystems on Earth, providing critical habitat for a wide range of species. When these forests are cleared, the species that depend on them for food, shelter, and breeding grounds are left without a home. This can lead to local extinctions, especially for species with limited ranges or specialized habitat requirements. For example, the clearing of tropical rainforests in the Amazon Basin has led to the decline of many species, including jaguars, primates, and countless insect species.



Fig. 8.3 An Example of Deforestation,

Source- Google Image

Habitat Fragmentation

The process of deforestation often results in habitat fragmentation, where large, continuous tracts of forest are divided into smaller, isolated patches. These fragmented

habitats can create barriers to species movement and gene flow, isolating populations and reducing genetic diversity. Fragmentation also increases the edge effects, where the conditions at the edges of habitat patches differ from those in the interior, often leading to increased predation, changes in microclimate, and other ecological disturbances. Species that require large, unbroken habitats, such as elephants and large carnivores, are particularly vulnerable to the effects of fragmentation.

Alteration of Ecosystem Function

Deforestation alters the structure and function of ecosystems, affecting processes such as nutrient cycling, soil formation, and water regulation. Forests play a crucial role in maintaining soil health and preventing erosion. When forests are removed, the exposed soil is more susceptible to erosion by wind and water, leading to the loss of fertile topsoil and the degradation of land. This can result in decreased agricultural productivity and increased sedimentation in rivers and streams, affecting aquatic ecosystems. Deforestation also disrupts the carbon and water cycles, as forests act as major carbon sinks and influence local and regional climate patterns through transpiration and the release of water vapour.

Industrialization

Industrialization, the process by which economies shift from agrarian-based systems to industrial and manufacturing-based ones, has profound impacts on biogeographic patterns. This transformation brings about significant changes in land use, habitat quality, and ecological processes. The expansion of industries leads to pollution, habitat destruction, and alteration of ecosystems, which in turn affect species distribution, abundance, and biodiversity.

Habitat Destruction and Urban Expansion

Industrialization often leads to the expansion of urban areas as cities grow to accommodate factories, workers, and infrastructure. This urban sprawl results in the destruction of natural habitats, such as forests, wetlands, and grasslands, to make way for industrial complexes, housing, and transportation networks. For example, rapid industrialization in China has led to the conversion of vast areas of farmland and natural habitats into urban and industrial areas, significantly impacting local biodiversity. The loss of these habitats forces many species to relocate, adapt to new environments, or face extinction.



Fig. 8.4 Habitat Destruction and Urban Expansion

Source Google Image

Pollution

One of the most significant impacts of industrialization is pollution, which affects air, water, and soil quality. Industrial activities release a variety of pollutants, including heavy metals, chemicals, and particulate matter, into the environment. Air pollution from factories and vehicles contributes to acid rain, which can damage forests, lakes, and streams, altering their chemical balance and affecting the species that inhabit them. Water pollution from industrial discharges contaminates rivers, lakes, and oceans, leading to the degradation of aquatic ecosystems. For example, the Great Lakes in North America have suffered from industrial pollution, leading to the decline of fish populations and other aquatic species. Soil pollution, often from the improper disposal of industrial waste, can lead to the loss of soil fertility and harm plant and animal life.





Source- Google Image

8.3.2 HABITAT FRAGMENTATION

Habitat fragmentation refers to the process by which large, contiguous habitats are divided into smaller, isolated patches, often due to human activities such as urban development, agriculture, logging, and infrastructure expansion.

This fragmentation alters the landscape structure and has profound ecological consequences, affecting species distribution, genetic diversity, ecosystem processes, and biodiversity.

Causes of Habitat Fragmentation

Urban Development: The expansion of cities and towns leads to the conversion of natural habitats into residential, commercial, and industrial areas. This process fragments habitats into smaller patches, surrounded by urban infrastructure.

Agriculture: The transformation of forests, grasslands, and wetlands into agricultural fields breaks up continuous habitats. This includes the creation of monocultures, which further reduces habitat heterogeneity.

Infrastructure Expansion: Roads, highways, railways, and pipelines dissect natural habitats, creating barriers to wildlife movement and leading to habitat isolation.

Logging and Mining: These activities clear large areas of forests and other habitats, creating fragmented landscapes that disrupt ecological processes.

Ecological Consequences of Habitat Fragmentation

Loss of Habitat Area: Fragmentation reduces the total area of suitable habitats for many species. Smaller habitat patches can support fewer individuals and are less likely to sustain viable populations in the long term.

Edge Effects: Fragmentation increases the amount of habitat edge relative to the interior. Edge habitats often have different environmental conditions (e.g., higher light levels, temperature fluctuations, and wind exposure) compared to interior habitats, which can affect species composition and interactions. For example, edges may favour generalist species over specialists, leading to changes in community structure (Murcia, 1995). **Isolation of Populations:** Fragmented habitats isolate wildlife populations, limiting their ability to disperse and find mates. This isolation can reduce genetic diversity, increase inbreeding, and make populations more vulnerable to local extinctions. For instance, the isolation of forest patches in the Brazilian Atlantic Forest has led to genetic differentiation and reduced genetic diversity in populations of several bird species (Martensen et al., 2008).

Disruption of Ecological Processes: Fragmentation disrupts processes such as pollination, seed dispersal, and predator-prey interactions. For example, fragmented landscapes can affect the movement of pollinators, reducing plant reproductive success and altering plant community dynamics (Hadley & Betts, 2012).

Increased Vulnerability to Invasive Species: Fragmented habitats are more susceptible to invasion by non-native species, which can outcompete native species and alter ecosystem functions. Fragmentation often creates disturbed environments that are more conducive to invasive species establishment and spread (With, 2004).

Impacts on Species

Reduced Population Sizes: Smaller, isolated patches support fewer individuals, making populations more susceptible to demographic fluctuations, environmental changes, and stochastic events.

Reduced Genetic Diversity: Limited gene flow between isolated populations can lead to inbreeding and a loss of genetic diversity, reducing the adaptive potential of populations. Studies on the Florida panther (Puma concolor coryi) have shown that habitat fragmentation and subsequent isolation have led to significant genetic problems, including inbreeding depression (Johnson et al., 2010).

Altered Species Interactions: Fragmentation can alter competitive relationships, predatorprey dynamics, and symbiotic interactions. For example, changes in predator abundance and behaviour in fragmented landscapes can lead to increased herbivore pressure on plants, affecting plant community composition (Fahrig, 2003).

Mitigation Strategies

Habitat Corridors: Creating corridors that connect fragmented habitats can facilitate wildlife movement, gene flow, and recolonization of habitats. Corridors help maintain ecological processes and improve the viability of populations. The establishment of wildlife corridors in the Western Ghats of India, for instance, has improved connectivity for species such as tigers and elephants (Dutta et al., 2016).

Protected Areas: Expanding and connecting protected areas can help conserve larger, contiguous habitats, reducing fragmentation impacts. Effective management of these areas is crucial to ensure long-term conservation.

Land-Use Planning: Incorporating ecological considerations into land-use planning and development can minimize habitat fragmentation. This includes designing urban areas with green spaces, preserving natural habitats, and promoting sustainable agricultural practices.

Restoration Ecology: Restoring degraded and fragmented habitats can improve connectivity and ecosystem function. Restoration efforts may involve reforestation, wetland restoration, and the creation of habitat corridors.

8.3.3 LANDSCAPE CONNECTIVITY

Landscape connectivity refers to the degree to which the landscape facilitates or impedes movement among habitat patches. It is a crucial concept in ecology and conservation biology, as it affects the survival and reproduction of species, the maintenance of biodiversity, and the resilience of ecosystems. Connectivity can be structural, referring to the physical arrangement of habitat patches, or functional, referring to the actual movement of organisms through the landscape.

Importance of Landscape Connectivity

Gene Flow and Genetic Diversity: Connectivity allows for the movement of individuals between populations, promoting gene flow and reducing the risks associated with inbreeding. This genetic exchange is vital for maintaining genetic diversity, which enhances the adaptive capacity of species to changing environmental conditions.

Species Dispersal and Colonization: Many species rely on connected landscapes to disperse and colonize new areas. This is particularly important for species with large home ranges,

migratory species, and those that undergo seasonal movements. Connected habitats enable these species to find new territories, resources, and mates.

Resilience to Environmental Changes: Connected landscapes can buffer the effects of environmental changes, such as climate change, by providing routes for species to migrate to more suitable habitats. This enhances the resilience of populations and ecosystems.

Maintenance of Ecological Processes: Connectivity supports essential ecological processes, such as pollination, seed dispersal, and predator-prey interactions. These processes are critical for ecosystem functioning and the provision of ecosystem services.

Factors Influencing Landscape Connectivity

Habitat Quality: The quality of habitat patches influences their suitability for different species. High-quality habitats provide the necessary resources and conditions for species survival and movement.

Matrix Permeability: The matrix, or the landscape between habitat patches, affects connectivity. A permeable matrix, such as a landscape with natural vegetation, allows easier movement of species compared to an impermeable matrix, like urban areas or intensive agriculture.

Distance Between Patches: The spatial arrangement and distance between habitat patches determine the ease of movement for species. Closer patches are generally more connected, facilitating easier dispersal and gene flow.

Barriers to Movement: Physical barriers, such as roads, rivers, and urban areas, can impede movement and reduce connectivity. Mitigating these barriers through wildlife crossings and corridors is crucial for maintaining connectivity.

Enhancing Landscape Connectivity

Habitat Corridors: Creating and maintaining habitat corridors, which are strips of natural habitat that connect isolated patches, can enhance connectivity. Corridors provide safe passage for species and facilitate dispersal and migration. For example, the Yellowstone to Yukon Conservation Initiative aims to establish a corridor for wildlife movement across a vast region in North America.

Protected Areas: Establishing networks of protected areas that are strategically located and connected can enhance landscape connectivity. These protected areas serve as refuges for biodiversity and stepping stones for species movement.

Restoration of Degraded Habitats: Restoring degraded habitats and enhancing their quality can improve connectivity. This may involve reforestation, wetland restoration, and the removal of invasive species.

Land-Use Planning: Integrating ecological considerations into land-use planning and development can minimize habitat fragmentation and enhance connectivity. This includes designing urban green spaces, maintaining natural vegetation along waterways, and promoting sustainable agricultural practices.

Wildlife Crossings: Implementing wildlife crossings, such as overpasses and underpasses, can mitigate the impacts of roads and other barriers on species movement. These structures are designed to allow safe passage for wildlife and reduce road mortality.

8.4 SUMMARY

Human activities have significantly altered biogeographic patterns, affecting the distribution and abundance of species, the structure of ecosystems, and the functioning of ecological processes. Urbanization, agriculture, deforestation, and industrialization are the primary drivers of these changes. Urbanization leads to the expansion of cities, converting natural habitats into residential and commercial areas, and creating fragmented landscapes. Agriculture transforms forests, grasslands, and wetlands into monocultures, further breaking up habitats and reducing biodiversity. Deforestation, driven by the need for timber and agricultural land, results in the loss of large forested areas, which are critical for numerous species. Industrialization contributes to pollution, climate change, and the construction of infrastructure, all of which disrupt natural habitats and species movement.

Habitat fragmentation, a direct consequence of these human activities, divides large, contiguous habitats into smaller, isolated patches. This process reduces the total area of suitable habitats, increases edge effects, and isolates populations, making it difficult for species to disperse, find mates, and maintain genetic diversity. Fragmented landscapes also disrupt ecological processes such as pollination, seed dispersal, and predator-prey

interactions. Edge habitats created by fragmentation often favour generalist species over specialists, leading to changes in community composition. Moreover, fragmented habitats are more susceptible to invasion by non-native species, which can outcompete native species and alter ecosystem functions.

Landscape connectivity is crucial for mitigating the negative effects of habitat fragmentation. Connectivity refers to the degree to which the landscape facilitates or impedes movement among habitat patches. It is essential for maintaining gene flow, species dispersal, and ecological processes. Enhancing connectivity involves creating habitat corridors, expanding protected areas, restoring degraded habitats, and integrating ecological considerations into land-use planning. For example, wildlife corridors and crossings can mitigate the impacts of roads and other barriers on species movement. Initiatives such as the European Green Belt and the Florida Wildlife Corridor aim to create connected networks of habitats to support biodiversity conservation and ecological resilience. These efforts are vital for ensuring the long-term survival of species and the health of ecosystems in the face of ongoing human-induced changes.

8.4 GLOSSARY

Biogeographic Patterns: The spatial distribution of species and ecosystems across different geographic areas, shaped by ecological and historical factors.

Habitat Fragmentation: The process of breaking up large, continuous habitats into smaller, isolated patches, often due to human activities such as urban development or agriculture.

Landscape Connectivity: The degree to which different habitat patches are connected, allowing for the movement and gene flow of species across a landscape.

Edge Effects: Ecological changes that occur at the boundaries of habitat fragments, which can alter conditions like temperature, light, and species interactions compared to interior habitats.

Urbanization: The expansion and development of urban areas, resulting in the conversion of natural landscapes into built environments, leading to habitat loss and fragmentation.

Agricultural Expansion: The conversion of natural ecosystems into agricultural land for crop production or livestock grazing, which often results in habitat destruction and fragmentation.

Deforestation: The large-scale clearing or thinning of forests for purposes such as agriculture, logging, or infrastructure development, causing habitat loss and ecological disruption.

Industrialization: The process of developing industries and infrastructure, which can lead to habitat destruction, pollution, and changes in land use.

Pollution: The introduction of contaminants into the environment, such as chemicals, waste, or pollutants, which can degrade habitats and affect wildlife.

Habitat Corridors: Strips of habitat that connect isolated patches, allowing for wildlife movement and gene flow between fragmented habitats.

Protected Areas: Designated regions set aside for the conservation of natural environments and biodiversity, often managed to mitigate human impacts.

Restoration Ecology: The scientific practice of restoring degraded or fragmented habitats to improve their ecological function and connectivity.

Wildlife Crossings: Structures such as overpasses or underpasses designed to allow animals to safely cross human-made barriers like roads, reducing roadkill and improving connectivity.

Invasive Species: Non-native organisms that, when introduced to new environments, can outcompete native species, disrupt ecosystems, and cause ecological harm.

8.5 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. Which human activity is most directly associated with habitat fragmentation?

- A) Climate change
- B) Industrialization
- C) Urbanization

D) Natural disasters

Answer: C) Urbanization

- 2. What term describes the ecological changes that occur at the edges of habitat fragments?
- A) Core habitat effects
- B) Matrix effects
- C) Edge effects
- D) Connectivity effects

Answer: C) Edge effects

- 3. Which of the following is an example of a landscape connectivity enhancement measure?
- A) Building new roads
- B) Expanding urban areas
- C) Creating habitat corridors
- D) Increasing agricultural land

Answer: C) Creating habitat corridors

4. What is the primary consequence of habitat fragmentation on species?

- A) Increased gene flow
- B) Enhanced species dispersal
- C) Isolation of populations
- D) Reduced edge effects

Answer: C) Isolation of populations

5. Which process leads to the conversion of natural landscapes into farmland?

- A) Deforestation
- B) Urbanization
- C) Agricultural expansion
- D) Industrialization

Answer: C) Agricultural expansion

- 6. Which term refers to the large-scale removal of forests for development or agriculture?
- A) Urbanization
- B) Deforestation
- C) Pollution
- D) Industrialization

Answer: B) Deforestation

7. How does climate change primarily affect biogeographic patterns?

- A) By increasing habitat area
- B) By altering habitat conditions and species distributions
- C) By improving landscape connectivity
- D) By reducing edge effects

Answer: B) By altering habitat conditions and species distributions

8. What is the function of wildlife crossings?

- A) To increase urban development
- B) To allow animals to safely cross barriers like roads

- C) To fragment habitats further
- D) To reduce habitat corridors

Answer: B) To allow animals to safely cross barriers like roads

9. What is a common result of industrialization on habitats?

- A) Habitat restoration
- B) Improved connectivity
- C) Habitat destruction and pollution
- D) Increased genetic diversity

Answer: C) Habitat destruction and pollution

- **10.** Which of the following practices helps to mitigate the effects of habitat fragmentation?
- A) Expanding urban sprawl
- B) Increasing industrial activities
- C) Establishing protected areas
- D) Converting natural land to agriculture

Answer: C) Establishing protected areas

8.7 REFERENCES

- McKinney, M. L. (2008). Effects of urbanization on species richness: A review of plants and animals. Urban Ecosystems, 11(2), 161-176. DOI: 10.1007/s11252-007-0045-4
- Amstrup, S. C., Marcot, B. G., & Douglas, D. C. (2008). A Bayesian network modelling approach to forecasting the 21st-century worldwide status of polar bears. US Geological Survey, USGS Alaska Science Center. DOI: 10.3133/ofr20081095

- Murcia, C. (1995). Edge effects in fragmented forests: implications for conservation. Trends in Ecology & Evolution, 10(2), 58-62. DOI: 10.1016/S0169-5347(00)88977-6
- Martensen, A. C., Pimentel, R. G., & Metzger, J. P. (2008). Relative effects of fragment size and connectivity on bird community in the Brazilian Atlantic Forest. Biological Conservation, 141(9), 2184-2192. DOI: 10.1016/j.biocon.2008.06.008
- Hadley, A. S., & Betts, M. G. (2012). The effects of landscape fragmentation on pollination dynamics: absence of evidence not evidence of absence. Biological Reviews, 87(3), 526-544. DOI: 10.1111/j.1469-185X.2011.00205.x
- With, K. A. (2004). Assessing the risk of invasive spread in fragmented landscapes. Risk Analysis, 24(4), 803-815. DOI: 10.1111/j.0272-4332.2004.00480.x
- Johnson, W. E., Onorato, D. P., Roelke, M. E., Land, E. D., Cunningham, M., Belden, R. C. & O'Brien, S. J. (2010). Genetic restoration of the Florida panther. Science, 329(5999), 1641-1645. DOI: 10.1126/science.1192891
- Fahrig, L. (2003). Effects of habitat fragmentation on biodiversity. Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution, and Systematics, 34, 487-515. DOI: 10.1146/annurev.ecolsys.34.011802.132419
- Dutta, T., Sharma, S., McRae, B. H., Roy, P. S., & DeFries, R. (2016). Connecting the dots: mapping habitat connectivity for tigers in central India. Regional Environmental Change, 16(1), 53-67. DOI: 10.1007/s10113-016-0990-6
- Haddad, N. M., Brudvig, L. A., Clobert, J., Davies, K. F., Gonzalez, A., Holt, R. D., ... & Townshend, J. R. (2015). Habitat fragmentation and its lasting impact on Earth's ecosystems. Science Advances, 1(2), e1500052. DOI: 10.1126/sciadv.1500052
- Hilty, J. A., Lidicker, W. Z., & Merenlender, A. M. (2006). Corridor ecology: the science and practice of linking landscapes for biodiversity conservation. Island Press.
- Laurance, W. F., & Balmford, A. (2013). A global map for road building. Nature, 495(7441), 308-309. DOI: 10.1038/495308a
- Sawyer, S. C., Epps, C. W., & Brashares, J. S. (2011). Placing linkages among fragmented habitats: do least-cost models reflect how animals use landscapes? Journal of Applied Ecology, 48(3), 668-678. DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2664.2011.01970.x
- Crooks, K. R., & Sanjayan, M. (2006). Connectivity conservation. Cambridge University Press. DOI: 10.1017/CBO9780511754821

8.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

- 1. How does urbanization contribute to habitat fragmentation, and what are its primary ecological consequences?
- 2. Discuss the role of habitat corridors in enhancing landscape connectivity and mitigating the effects of habitat fragmentation.
- 3. Explain how agricultural expansion affects biogeographic patterns and provide examples of its impact on specific ecosystems.
- 4. Analyze the impact of deforestation on species diversity and ecosystem services. How can restoration efforts help counteract these effects?
- 5. Describe the concept of edge effects and discuss how they influence species interactions and habitat quality in fragmented landscapes.
- 6. What are the major ways in which industrialization affects landscape connectivity and habitat integrity? Provide specific examples.
- 7. Evaluate the impact of climate change on biogeographic patterns and species distributions. How can connectivity measures help species adapt to these changes?
- 8. How do wildlife crossings function to improve landscape connectivity, and what design considerations are essential for their effectiveness?
- 9. Discuss the methods used in restoration ecology to improve habitat connectivity and reduce fragmentation. What are the challenges and successes associated with these methods?
- 10. How does pollution contribute to habitat degradation and affect landscape connectivity? What strategies can be implemented to mitigate these impacts?

UNIT-9: INVASIVE SPECIES AND THEIR BIO-GEOGRAPHIC CONSEQUENCES.

9.1 OBJECTIVES

9.2 INTRODUCTION

9.3 INVASIVE SPECIES AND THEIR BIO-GEOGRAPHIC CONSEQUENCES.

9.3.1 CHARACTERISTICS OF INVASIVE SPECIES

- 9.3.2 INVASIVE SPECIES: EFFECTS ON NATURAL DISPERSAL VS. HUMAN-MEDIATED TRANSPORT
- 9.3.3 EXAMPLES OF INVASIVE SPECIES AND THEIR IMPACT

9.4 SUMMARY

9.5 GLOSSARY

9.6 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

9.7 REFERENCES

9.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

9.1 OBJECTIVE

- Understanding the characteristics of invasive species.
- Learn about invasive species: effect on natural dispersal Vs. Human-mediated transport.
- Gain knowledge about invasive species and their impact.

9.2 INTRODUCTION

The spread of various invasive species continues to increase and this has posed a serious threat to the native species and ecosystem and is an important cause of species extinction. Alien species which locally become dominant and invade natural communities are referred to as invasive species. In an established ecosystem, there is a natural balance, and the plants and animals within these systems find this balance suitable for their survival. Invasive species can reduce biodiversity, degrade habitats alter native, transmit exotic diseases to native species, and further put at risk to threatened and endangered plants and animals. Invasive species, owing to their aggressive nature can expand their zone of occupancy in quick succession, spread over large tracts, endanger the natural elements of flora and bring about abrupt changes in floristic composition.

Invasive species, also known as alien or non-native species, are organisms introduced to a region outside their native range, where they establish, proliferate, and cause harm to the environment, economy, or human health. These species can be plants, animals, fungi, or microorganisms that, once introduced to a new area, outcompete, prey on, or otherwise disrupt local species and ecosystems. The introduction of invasive species is often a result of human activities such as global trade, travel, and the intentional or accidental release of organisms into non-native environments.

The biogeographic consequences of invasive species are profound and multifaceted. Ecologically, invasive species can alter habitat structure, nutrient cycling, and ecosystem functions. For example, the introduction of invasive plants can lead to the displacement of native flora, resulting in reduced biodiversity and changes in soil chemistry. Similarly, invasive animals can disrupt food webs, predate on native species, and compete for resources, leading to declines or extinctions of indigenous populations. These ecological changes can cascade through ecosystems, affecting not only the immediate area of invasion but also connected habitats and species. On a biogeographic scale, invasive species can contribute to the homogenization of global biodiversity. As non-native species spread and establish themselves in new regions, they often replace unique local species, leading to a decrease in regional biodiversity and an increase in similarity between ecosystems in different parts of the world. This homogenization undermines the resilience of ecosystems, making them more susceptible to diseases, pests, and environmental changes. Additionally, invasive species can alter the evolutionary trajectories of native species through hybridization and genetic swamping, further diminishing the genetic diversity and adaptability of local populations.

The economic and social impacts of invasive species are equally significant. Invasive species can affect agriculture, forestry, fisheries, and tourism, leading to substantial economic losses. For instance, invasive weeds can reduce crop yields and increase the cost of weed control, while invasive pests and pathogens can damage crops, livestock, and forestry resources. The management and eradication of invasive species require considerable resources, and the costs associated with these efforts can strain public and private budgets. Moreover, invasive species can impact human health by spreading diseases, causing allergic reactions, or creating hazardous conditions in natural and urban environments.

What is an Invasive species?

Invasive species are non-native organisms that are introduced to a new environment, where they establish, proliferate, and cause harm to the local ecosystems, economy, or human health. These species can include plants, animals, fungi, or microorganisms that, once outside their natural range, outcompete, prey on, or disrupt native species and habitats.

Invasive species typically possess certain traits that enhance their ability to spread and thrive in new environments, such as rapid reproduction, high dispersal capabilities, and a broad tolerance to various environmental conditions. Their introduction can occur through various pathways, including natural dispersal mechanisms or human activities such as global trade, travel, and the intentional or accidental release of organisms.

The impact of invasive species is significant and multifaceted, leading to the alteration of habitat structures, nutrient cycling, and ecosystem functions. They often displace native species, reduce biodiversity, and cause ecological imbalances that can have far-reaching consequences on local and global scales. Addressing the threat posed by invasive species involves understanding their pathways of introduction, mechanisms of establishment, and the broad ecological and socio-economic impacts they cause, which is essential for developing effective management and control strategies.

9.3 INVASIVE SPECIES AND THEIR BIO-GEOGRAPHIC CONSEQUENCES.

9.3.1 CHARACTERISTICS OF INVASIVE SPECIES

Invasive species possess a range of traits that enable them to establish, spread, and dominate in new environments. These characteristics often give them a competitive advantage over native species and contribute to their success as invaders. Here are some key characteristics of invasive species:

1. Rapid Reproduction and Growth

Invasive species often have high reproductive rates, allowing them to increase their population quickly. They may reproduce through seeds, spores, or asexual means like fragmentation. For example, the zebra mussel (Dreissena polymorpha) can produce up to one million eggs per year, leading to rapid population growth and spread.

2. High Dispersal Capability

Many invasive species have mechanisms for effective dispersal over large distances. These can include wind-dispersed seeds, water currents, or human-mediated transport via ships, planes, or vehicles. The gypsy moth (Lymantria dispar), for instance, spreads through windborne larvae and human activities like transporting firewood.

3. Broad Tolerance to Environmental Conditions

Invasive species often exhibit a wide range of tolerance to different environmental conditions, such as temperature, salinity, and moisture levels. This adaptability allows them to thrive in diverse habitats. The invasive plant Japanese knotweed (Fallopia japonica) can grow in a variety of soil types and environmental conditions, making it difficult to control.

4. Aggressive Competition

Invasive species frequently outcompete native species for resources such as light, nutrients, and space. They may possess traits like fast growth rates, allelopathy (chemical inhibition of other plants), or superior root systems. For example, the invasive shrub kudzu (Pueraria montana var. lobata) grows rapidly and smothers native vegetation by blocking sunlight.

5. Lack of Natural Predators and Diseases

In their new environments, invasive species often face fewer natural predators, parasites, and diseases compared to their native habitats. This lack of biological control allows their populations to grow unchecked. The cane toad (Rhinella marina) in Australia, for instance, has few natural enemies, enabling it to spread widely and impact native species.

6. Efficient Resource Utilization

Invasive species can utilize available resources more efficiently than native species. They often have traits such as high photosynthetic rates, efficient nutrient uptake, and drought resistance. The invasive grass species cheatgrass (Bromus tectorum) is highly efficient in utilizing water and nutrients, allowing it to dominate native grasses in arid environments.

7. Early and Prolific Reproduction

Many invasive species can reproduce early in their life cycle and produce numerous offspring. This strategy helps them establish and expand their populations quickly. The European green crab (Carcinus maenas) matures early and produces large numbers of larvae, facilitating its spread along coastlines.

9.3.2 INVASIVE SPECIES: EFFECTS ON NATURAL DISPERSAL VS. HUMAN-MEDIATED TRANSPORT

Natural Dispersal Mechanisms

Natural dispersal mechanisms of species involve processes that allow organisms to spread within their native or introduced ranges without direct human intervention. These mechanisms are essential for species' survival, enabling them to colonize new areas and maintain genetic diversity. Common natural dispersal methods include:

Wind Dispersal (Anemochory)

Many plants and some small organisms utilize wind for dispersal. Seeds, spores, and lightweight insects can be carried over long distances by air currents. For example, the seeds of dandelions (Taraxacum spp.) have specialized structures that allow them to be carried by the wind.

Water Dispersal (Hydrochory)

Aquatic and semi-aquatic species can be dispersed by water currents. Seeds and larvae can float on water surfaces or be carried by rivers and ocean currents to new locations. Mangrove seeds, for instance, are dispersed by tidal and ocean currents.

Animal Dispersal (Zoochory)

Animals can transport seeds, spores, and small organisms externally (epizoochory) or internally (endozoochory). Birds, mammals, and insects often play crucial roles in dispersing plant seeds by carrying them on their bodies or excreting them after ingestion.

Human-Mediated Transport

Human activities have drastically altered the dispersal dynamics of species, often leading to the introduction of invasive species to new environments. This process, known as human-mediated transport, can be both intentional and unintentional.

Global Trade and Commerce

The movement of goods and materials across the globe facilitates the unintentional transport of invasive species. Containers, pallets, and packaging materials can harbour insects, seeds, and microorganisms. For instance, the brown marmorated stink bug (Halyomorpha halys) has spread globally via shipping containers.

Travel and Tourism

Increased human travel has heightened the risk of species being transported across borders. Tourists can carry seeds on their clothing, shoes, and luggage, while vehicles and aeroplanes can transport small organisms unintentionally.

Intentional Introductions

Some species are introduced deliberately for purposes such as agriculture, horticulture, aquaculture, and biological control. However, these species can escape cultivation and become invasive. The introduction of the cane toad (Rhinella marina) in Australia for pest control is a notable example of an intentional introduction gone awry.

Pet Trade and Ornamental Plants

The trade of exotic pets and ornamental plants can introduce non-native species into new environments. Released or escaped pets and garden plants can establish wild populations. The Burmese python (Python bivittatus) in the Florida Everglades is an example of an invasive species originating from the pet trade.

Comparative Impact of Natural vs. Human-Mediated Dispersal

Speed and Scale

Human-mediated transport facilitates the rapid and large-scale movement of species, often across continents, far exceeding the natural dispersal capabilities of most organisms. This accelerated spread increases the likelihood of invasive species establishing in new regions.

Ecological Consequences

Natural dispersal typically involves gradual spread within ecologically suitable areas, allowing ecosystems to adapt over time. In contrast, human-mediated introductions often place species in completely novel environments, leading to severe ecological disruptions. Invasive species introduced by humans can outcompete, prey on, or hybridize with native species, leading to biodiversity loss and altered ecosystem functions.

Management Challenges

Managing invasions resulting from human-mediated transport is more challenging due to the unpredictability and extent of spread. Prevention, early detection, and rapid response are crucial strategies for mitigating the impacts of invasive species introduced through human activities.

9.3.3 EXAMPLES OF INVASIVE SPECIES AND THEIR IMPACTS

1. Zebra Mussel (Dreissena polymorpha)

The zebra mussel is a small freshwater mollusc native to the lakes of southern Russia and Ukraine. It was first discovered in North America in the late 1980s, likely introduced through ballast water discharged by cargo ships. Zebra mussels rapidly spread throughout the Great Lakes and many river systems in the United States and Canada.

Fig. No. 9.1 The zebra mussel



Source- Google

Ecological Impact:

Zebra mussels filter large volumes of water to feed on plankton, significantly reducing the availability of this vital resource for native species. Their filtering activity can increase water clarity, leading to changes in the aquatic ecosystem, such as the proliferation of aquatic plants. They also attach to hard surfaces, including boat hulls, water intake pipes, and native mussels, causing physical damage and clogging infrastructure.

Economic Impact:

The costs associated with managing zebra mussel infestations are substantial. Power plants, municipal water supplies, and industrial facilities spend millions of dollars annually to clean clogged pipes and equipment. Recreational boating and fishing industries also suffer due to the fouling of boats and fishing gear.

2. Asian Carp (Various species including Hypophthalmichthys molitrix and H. Nobilis)

Asian carp species were imported to the United States in the 1970s for use in aquaculture and wastewater treatment facilities due to their filter-feeding habits. They escaped into the wild and have since spread throughout the Mississippi River basin and other water systems.



Fig. No. 9.2 Asian carp

Source- Google

Ecological Impact:

Asian carp compete with native fish species for food and habitat. Their high reproductive rates and efficient feeding on plankton disrupt the food web, negatively impacting native fish populations, particularly those reliant on plankton. Their presence has led to declines in biodiversity and altered ecosystem dynamics.

Economic Impact:

The invasion of Asian carp threatens commercial and recreational fisheries. Efforts to prevent their spread into the Great Lakes, where they could cause significant ecological and economic damage, have led to costly control measures, including electric barriers and intensive monitoring programs.

3. Kudzu (Pueraria montana var. lobata)

Kudzu is a fast-growing vine native to Asia, introduced to the United States in the late 19th century for erosion control and as an ornamental plant. It has since become widespread, particularly in the southeastern United States.



Fig. No. 9.3 Kudzu

Source- Google

Ecological Impact:

Kudzu grows rapidly, up to a foot per day, and can smother native vegetation by blocking sunlight. This leads to the death of trees and shrubs, resulting in loss of biodiversity and changes in habitat structure. Kudzu also alters soil chemistry, affecting nutrient availability for native plants.

Economic Impact:

The invasive vine causes significant economic damage to agriculture and forestry. Control and eradication efforts are expensive and labour-intensive, with costs running into millions of dollars annually. Kudzu can also damage infrastructure, such as power lines and buildings.

4. European Starling (Sturnus vulgaris)

The European starling is a bird species native to Europe, Asia, and North Africa. It was introduced to North America in the late 19th century by enthusiasts who wanted to introduce all birds mentioned in Shakespeare's works to the continent.



Fig. No.9.4 The European starling

Source- Google

Ecological Impact:

European starlings are highly adaptable and aggressive, often outcompeting native bird species for nesting sites and food resources. They form large flocks that can devastate crops

and displace native birds from their habitats. Their nesting behaviour can also block ventilation systems and damage structures.

Economic Impact:

Starlings cause considerable damage to crops, particularly fruits and grains. The cost of crop losses, combined with control measures to prevent their impact, is substantial. They also pose risks to aviation safety by forming large flocks near airports.

5. Brown Tree Snake (Boiga irregularis)

The brown tree snake, native to Australia, Papua New Guinea, and the Solomon Islands, was inadvertently introduced to Guam in the mid-20th century, likely through military cargo.



Fig. No.9.5 The brown tree snake

The brown tree snake has caused the extinction of many native bird and lizard species in Guam due to predation. The loss of these species has disrupted the island's ecosystem, affecting pollination, seed dispersal, and overall biodiversity. The snake's presence has also led to an increase in insect populations previously controlled by native birds.

Economic Impact:

The snake's propensity to climb power poles and enter electrical equipment has led to frequent power outages, costing the island millions in repairs and lost productivity.

Additionally, the snake's presence affects tourism and necessitates expensive control programs to prevent its spread to other islands and regions.

9.4 SUMMARY

Invasive species are non-native organisms that, when introduced to new environments, establish, spread, and cause harm to local ecosystems, economies, and human health. These species can be plants, animals, fungi, or microorganisms that thrive outside their natural range, often outcompeting native species for resources. The introduction of invasive species can occur through natural dispersal mechanisms or, more commonly, human-mediated transport such as global trade, travel, and intentional releases. Once established, invasive species can disrupt local ecosystems by altering habitat structures, nutrient cycling, and food webs, leading to significant ecological imbalances.

The biogeographic consequences of invasive species are profound and far-reaching. Ecologically, invasive species can lead to the decline or extinction of native species by preying on them, outcompeting them for resources, or introducing new diseases. This can result in reduced biodiversity and the loss of ecosystem services that native species provide, such as pollination, water filtration, and soil stabilization. For instance, the introduction of the brown tree snake in Guam has led to the extirpation of many native bird species, disrupting the island's ecological balance. Additionally, invasive plants like kudzu in the southeastern United States can overrun native vegetation, altering soil chemistry and habitat structures, which further exacerbates the decline of native species.

Economically, invasive species impose substantial costs on agriculture, forestry, fisheries, and infrastructure. The management and control of invasive species require significant financial resources and labour, often running into billions of dollars annually. For example, zebra mussels clog water intake pipes and damage boats, leading to costly maintenance and repairs. Similarly, Asian carp in North American waterways threaten commercial and recreational fisheries, prompting expensive measures to prevent their spread. Beyond economic impacts, invasive species can also pose health risks to humans by introducing new pathogens or increasing the prevalence of diseases. Overall, the biogeographic

consequences of invasive species highlight the critical need for effective prevention, management, and mitigation strategies to protect native biodiversity and ecosystem health.

9.5 GLOSSARY

Invasive Species: Non-native organisms that establish, spread, and cause harm to local ecosystems, economies, and human health in new environments.

Natural Dispersal: The movement of species within their native or introduced ranges through natural means such as wind, water, or animal carriers.

Human-Mediated Transport: The unintentional or intentional movement of species by human activities such as global trade, travel, and agriculture.

Biodiversity: The variety of life in a particular habitat or ecosystem, including the number of different species, genetic variability, and the complexity of ecosystems.

Ecosystem Services: Benefits provided by ecosystems to humans, which include pollination, water filtration, climate regulation, and soil stabilization.

Ecological Impact: The effects of invasive species on native species, habitats, and ecosystem functions, often resulting in reduced biodiversity and altered ecosystem dynamics.

Economic Impact: The financial costs associated with the management, control, and damage caused by invasive species, affecting industries such as agriculture, fisheries, and infrastructure.

Biogeography: The study of the distribution of species and ecosystems in geographic space and through geological time.

Ballast Water: Water carried in ships' ballast tanks to improve stability, is often a pathway for the introduction of invasive aquatic species.

Eradication: The complete removal or destruction of an invasive species from a particular area or ecosystem.

Control Measures: Strategies and actions taken to manage and limit the spread and impact of invasive species, including physical, chemical, and biological methods.

Habitat Alteration: Changes to the natural environment caused by invasive species, which can include the modification of soil chemistry, light availability, and habitat structures.

Competition: The interaction between species for limited resources such as food, space, and light, often leading to the displacement or decline of less competitive native species.

Pathogen: A microorganism that causes disease in its host, which can be spread by invasive species and pose risks to native species and human health.

Genetic Diversity: The total number of genetic characteristics in the genetic makeup of a species, important for the adaptability and survival of species within ecosystems.

9.6 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. What is an invasive species?

- A) A native species that thrives in its natural habitat
- B) A non-native species that causes harm to local ecosystems
- C) A species that is beneficial to agriculture
- D) A domesticated species used in farming

Answer: B) A non-native species that causes harm to local ecosystems

2. Which of the following is a common natural dispersal mechanism?

- A) Shipping containers
- B) Air travel
- C) Wind dispersal
- D) Ballast water

Answer: C) Wind dispersal

3. What major problem do zebra mussels cause in North America?

- A) Polluting rivers
- B) Clogging water intake pipes
- C) Predating on native birds
- D) Spreading diseases to humans

Answer: B) Clogging water intake pipes

4. Which of the following is an example of human-mediated transport of invasive species?

- A) Animal migration
- B) Ocean currents
- C) Ballast water discharge
- D) Wind currents

Answer: C) Ballast water discharge

5. Why is the brown tree snake a significant invasive species in Guam?

- A) It competes with native fish for food
- B) It causes frequent power outages by climbing power poles
- C) It destroys crops
- D) It spreads rapidly through wind dispersal

Answer: B) It causes frequent power outages by climbing power poles

- 6. What type of economic impact can invasive species have?
- A) Increased tourism
- B) Reduced agricultural productivity

- C) Lower water quality
- D) Enhanced biodiversity

Answer: B) Reduced agricultural productivity

7. What is the primary ecological impact of kudzu in the southeastern United States?

- A) Providing habitat for native birds
- B) Smothering native vegetation
- C) Increasing soil fertility
- D) Reducing water availability

Answer: B) Smothering native vegetation

8. Which invasive species was introduced to the United States for erosion control?

- A) Zebra mussel
- B) Brown tree snake
- C) Kudzu
- D) Asian carp

Answer: C) Kudzu

9. How do invasive species typically affect biodiversity?

- A) They increase the number of native species
- B) They reduce biodiversity by outcompeting native species
- C) They have no impact on biodiversity
- D) They introduce new genetic material to native species

Answer: B) They reduce biodiversity by outcompeting native species

- 10 Which of the following is a strategy to manage invasive species?
- A) Ignoring the problem
- B) Enhancing their spread
- C) Implementing control measures
- D) Promoting their introduction of economic benefits

Answer: C) Implementing control measures

9.7 REFERENCES

- Feare, C. (1984). The Starling. Oxford University Press.
- Forseth, I. N., & Innis, A. F. (2004). Kudzu (Pueraria Montana): History, physiology, and ecology combine to make a major ecosystem threat. Critical Reviews in Plant Sciences, 23(5), 401-413.
- Kolar, C. S., & Lodge, D. M. (2002). Ecological predictions and risk assessment for alien fishes in North America. Science, 298(5596), 1233-1236.:
- Nalepa, T. F., & Schloesser, D. W. (Eds.). (2013). Quagga and Zebra Mussels: Biology, Impacts, and Control. CRC Press.
- Ricciardi, A. (2007). Are modern biological invasions an unprecedented form of global change? Conservation Biology, 21(2), 329-336.
- Kraus, F. (2009). Alien reptiles and amphibians: a scientific compendium and analysis. Springer.
- McNeely, J. A. (2001). The great reshuffling: how alien species help feed the global economy. Invasive species in a changing world, 11-31.
- Howe, H. F., & Smallwood, J. (1982). Ecology of seed dispersal. Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics, 13(1), 201-228.
- Carlquist, S. (1974). Island Biology. Columbia University Press.

- Barney, J. N., & DiTomaso, J. M. (2008). Nonnative species and bioenergy: are we cultivating the next invader? Bioscience, 58(1), 64-70.
- Forseth, I. N., & Innis, A. F. (2004). Kudzu (Pueraria Montana): history, physiology, and ecology combine to make a major ecosystem threat. Critical Reviews in Plant Sciences, 23(5), 401-413.
- Shine, R., & Doody, J. S. (2011). Invasive species control: insights from brown tree snakes and research management. Conservation Biology, 25(5), 1179-1187.
- D'Antonio, C. M., & Vitousek, P. M. (1992). Biological invasions by exotic grasses, the grass/fire cycle, and global change. Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics, 23(1), 63-87.
- Grosholz, E. D., & Ruiz, G. M. (1996). Predicting the impact of introduced marine species: lessons from the multiple invasions of the European green crab Carcinus maenas. Biological Conservation, 78(1-2), 59-66.

9.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

- 1. Explain the definition of invasive species and how they differ from native species.
- 2. Discuss the primary natural dispersal mechanisms of invasive species and provide examples for each.
- 3. Analyze the role of human-mediated transport in the spread of invasive species and describe two major pathways.
- 4. Evaluate the ecological impacts of the zebra mussel in North American waterways. How does it affect native species and ecosystems?
- 5. Assess the economic consequences of invasive species, focusing on one specific industry such as agriculture, fisheries, or infrastructure.
- 6. Describe the biogeographic consequences of the introduction of the brown tree snake to Guam. What has been its impact on local wildlife and ecosystems?
- 7. Examine the challenges and strategies involved in the eradication and control of invasive species. Provide examples of successful and unsuccessful efforts.
- 8. Discuss the impact of invasive plants, such as kudzu, on habitat alteration and native plant communities. How does this affect overall biodiversity?

- 9. Compare and contrast natural dispersal with human-mediated transport in the context of invasive species. Which has a more significant impact and why?
- 10. Identify and explain three key characteristics of invasive species that enable them to thrive and spread in new environments.

UNIT-10:CONSERVATIONBIOGEOGRAPHY:PRIORITIZATION, RESERVESDESIGN, ENDEMISMAND HOTSPOTS OF BIODIVERSITY.

10.1 OBJECTIVES

10.2 INTRODUCTION

- 10.3 CONSERVATION BIOGEOGRAPHY: PRIORITIZATION, RESERVES DESIGN, ENDEMISM AND HOTSPOTS OF BIODIVERSITY.
 - 10.3.1 PRIORITISATION IN CONSERVATION BIOGEOGRAPHY
 - **10.3.2 RESERVES DESIGN**
 - **10.3.3 ENDEMISM**
 - **10.3.4 HOTSPOTS OF BIODIVERSITY**
 - **10.4 SUMMARY**
- **10.5 GLOSSARY**
- **10.6 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS**
- **10.7 REFERENCES**

10.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

10.1 OBJECTIVES

After reading this unit, you will be able to:

- Understand the Introduction of prioritization in conservation biogeography.
- Learn about Reserve design in biogeography.
- Gain knowledge about Endemism.
- Understand the hotspots of biodiversity.

10.2 INTRODUCTION

Conservation biogeography is a multidisciplinary field that combines the principles of biogeography with conservation science to address the urgent need for biodiversity preservation. It seeks to understand the spatial distribution of species and ecosystems and the ecological and evolutionary processes that drive these patterns. By doing so, conservation biogeography provides essential insights for identifying and prioritizing areas for conservation efforts. The field emphasizes the importance of considering both current and historical distributions of species, as well as the factors influencing these patterns, to develop effective conservation strategies.

Prioritization in conservation biogeography involves identifying areas that are critical for biodiversity conservation based on criteria such as species richness, endemism, and threat levels. This process ensures that limited conservation resources are allocated to areas where they can have the most significant impact. Methods for prioritization often include species-based approaches, which focus on the conservation of individual species, and ecosystem-based approaches, which aim to protect entire ecosystems and the services they provide. Tools such as Geographic Information Systems (GIS) and conservation planning software play a crucial role in this process, allowing for the analysis and visualization of spatial data to inform decision-making.

Reserve design is another vital component of conservation biogeography, focusing on creating protected areas that are ecologically viable and resilient to environmental changes. Effective reserve design considers factors such as the size and shape of reserves, connectivity between habitat patches, and the inclusion of buffer zones to mitigate edge effects.

Endemism, which refers to species found only in specific geographic locations, is also critical in reserve design. Endemic species are often at higher risk of extinction due to their limited distributions, making their conservation a priority. Biodiversity hotspots, regions with exceptionally high levels of species richness and endemism, are also key targets for conservation efforts. These areas not only harbour a significant portion of the world's biodiversity but also face intense pressures from human activities, making their protection crucial for global biodiversity conservation. Conservation biogeography provides a comprehensive framework for preserving the world's natural heritage by integrating prioritization, reserve design, endemism, and hotspot identification.

10.3 CONSERVATION BIOGEOGRAPHY: PRIORITIZATION, RESERVES DESIGN, ENDEMISM AND HOTSPOTS OF BIODIVERSITY

10.3.1 PRIORITIZATION IN CONSERVATION BIOGEOGRAPHY

Conservation biogeography, a discipline that integrates the principles of ecology, biogeography, and conservation biology, focuses on preserving biodiversity across geographic regions. One of its core challenges is to allocate limited resources in ways that maximize conservation benefits. Prioritization strategies are essential to target areas, species, and ecosystems most in need of protection. This involves several approaches, including identifying biodiversity hotspots, considering phylogenetic diversity, focusing on endangered species, and accounting for future climate changes.

A foundational approach to prioritization is identifying biodiversity hotspots, which are regions with high species richness and endemism, but also significant threats, such as habitat destruction. These hotspots receive priority because they house a large number of species within relatively small areas. Conservation International defines a biodiversity hotspot as a region containing at least 1,500 endemic species of vascular plants and having lost at least 70% of its original habitat. For example, the tropical forests in Southeast Asia and the Amazon rainforest are well-known biodiversity hotspots that have received global conservation attention. Protecting these areas helps safeguard a large proportion of global biodiversity, ensuring that numerous species are protected through concentrated efforts. In addition to focusing on species richness, prioritization strategies often incorporate phylogenetic diversity, which emphasizes the evolutionary distinctiveness of species. This approach prioritizes the protection of species that represent a significant portion of evolutionary history. Species that are the sole surviving members of ancient lineages—like the tuatara, an ancient reptile found only in New Zealand—are considered high-priority because their extinction would result in a disproportionate loss of evolutionary history. By preserving phylogenetic diversity, conservationists aim to maintain the breadth of evolutionary processes that have shaped life on Earth.

Another common approach involves focusing on endangered species. These species, identified through global databases such as the IUCN Red List, are given priority due to their immediate risk of extinction. Species categorized as Critically Endangered, Endangered, or Vulnerable often receive the bulk of conservation resources, particularly in regions where habitat destruction, poaching, or invasive species pose significant threats. For instance, the Javan rhinoceros, one of the rarest large mammals in the world, has become a focal point for conservation in Southeast Asia due to its critically endangered status. Prioritizing such species ensures that urgent conservation actions are taken to prevent irreversible losses.

However, focusing solely on current threats does not account for future challenges, such as climate change. Conservation biogeography increasingly includes models predicting the impact of climate change on species distributions. These models are used to identify climate refugia—regions likely to remain stable and suitable for species despite changing climatic conditions. Prioritizing these areas for conservation ensures that ecosystems will have the resilience needed to endure future environmental shifts. For example, boreal forests, which are less susceptible to extreme temperature fluctuations, are often seen as potential refugia for species migrating from more climate-impacted regions.

10.3.2 RESERVES DESIGN

Reserve design in biogeography is a crucial element of conservation planning, aiming to protect biodiversity by establishing protected areas (reserves) that maintain viable populations of species and preserve ecological processes. The goal is to create a network of reserves that maximize biodiversity protection, accounting for species distributions, habitat requirements, and environmental threats. Effective reserve design is grounded in biogeographic principles and considers factors such as size, connectivity, representativeness, and resilience to changing environmental conditions.

A fundamental principle in reserve design is the size and configuration of the protected area. Larger reserves are generally favoured because they can support more species, especially those with large home ranges, and maintain viable populations over the long term. The species-area relationship in biogeography, which posits that larger areas contain more species due to habitat heterogeneity and lower extinction rates, supports the argument for creating expansive reserves. For example, large reserves like Yellowstone National Park in the United States and the Serengeti in Tanzania can maintain populations of wide-ranging species like wolves, bison, and elephants, which require vast territories to thrive. However, while larger reserves are desirable, practical constraints such as land availability and cost often limit their size, making strategic planning essential.

Connectivity between reserves is another critical consideration in reserve design. Biogeographic theory suggests that isolated populations are more vulnerable to extinction due to inbreeding, genetic drift, and the inability to recolonize habitats after local extinctions. By establishing wildlife corridors and maintaining habitat connectivity, reserve networks can allow species to migrate, disperse, and maintain genetic diversity. The concept of metapopulation dynamics supports this approach, emphasizing that even small, fragmented populations can persist if individuals can move between habitat patches. For instance, the Yellowstone to Yukon Conservation Initiative (Y2Y) is a transboundary conservation effort that aims to connect protected areas across the U.S.-Canada border, allowing species such as grizzly bears and wolves to move freely across their historical range.

Another key aspect of reserve design is ensuring representativeness, meaning that reserves should protect a variety of ecosystems and habitats to capture the full spectrum of biodiversity within a region. Biogeography emphasizes the importance of conserving a range of ecological communities, from forests and wetlands to grasslands and deserts, to ensure that species with diverse habitat requirements are included in the reserve network. For example, the SLOSS debate ("Single Large Or Several Small") highlights the trade-offs between creating one large reserve versus multiple smaller reserves that span different habitats. While larger reserves are beneficial for species needing extensive ranges, several smaller reserves can sometimes protect a greater diversity of habitats and species.

In addition to representativeness, reserve design must account for environmental gradients and potential climate changes. Conservation biogeography increasingly incorporates climate change resilience into reserve planning by identifying areas that will remain suitable for species as the climate shifts. Reserves placed along elevational gradients or in regions with varied microclimates can act as climate refugia, providing species with opportunities to move to more suitable environments as conditions change. For example, the Andes-Amazon Conservation Corridor in South America protects a vast area that spans different elevations, allowing species to migrate upslope in response to rising temperatures.

Finally, effective reserve design must also consider human activities and land-use conflicts. Many of the world's biodiversity-rich regions are also areas of high human population density, agriculture, or industrial development, creating challenges for establishing reserves. Zoning within and around reserves can mitigate these conflicts by designating core areas for strict protection and surrounding buffer zones for sustainable land uses, such as ecotourism or controlled resource extraction. The Biosphere Reserve model developed by UNESCO exemplifies this approach, where core conservation areas are complemented by buffer zones that integrate human activities in a way that supports conservation goals. This model has been applied in various contexts, such as the Montseny Biosphere Reserve in Spain, where traditional farming practices coexist with biodiversity protection efforts.

10.3.3 ENDEMISM

Endemism refers to the ecological condition where species are native to and restricted to a specific geographic location, such as an island, a mountain range, or a particular region. These species are not found naturally anywhere else in the world. In biogeography, endemism is a key concept because it helps scientists understand the spatial distribution of species and the unique evolutionary processes that give rise to species confined to particular areas. Endemic species often arise in isolated or specialized habitats where geographic or ecological barriers limit their range.

Endemism is closely tied to the concept of isolation, whether geographical, ecological, or both. Geographical isolation occurs in regions such as islands, mountain ranges, or isolated valleys, where species have evolved separately from those on the mainland or in adjacent ecosystems. Island biogeography, for instance, provides some of the most

compelling examples of endemism. The Galápagos Islands are famous for their high levels of endemism, with species such as the Galápagos tortoise and Darwin's finches evolving in isolation from the South American mainland. Islands tend to foster endemism because they provide isolated environments where populations evolve independently over long periods without much gene flow from other areas. This isolation can result in species that are highly specialized to the unique conditions of the island ecosystem.

Ecological endemism occurs when species evolve to fit very specific environmental conditions that are not found elsewhere. For example, plant species that are endemic to certain soil types, such as serpentine soils or limestone outcrops, have evolved unique physiological traits to survive in these chemically challenging environments. These highly specialized species can be found in small, restricted habitats and are often vulnerable to environmental changes. The California Floristic Province is a notable example, harbouring numerous endemic plant species that are adapted to the region's Mediterranean climate and unique soil conditions. This region is considered a biodiversity hotspot, which is a concept used in conservation biogeography to describe areas with high levels of endemism that are also under significant threat from human activities like agriculture or urbanization.

Another important factor contributing to endemism is climatic stability. Regions that have experienced relatively stable climates over long geological periods tend to have higher rates of endemism because species have had the opportunity to evolve and adapt to specific environmental conditions. In contrast, regions that have undergone frequent climatic fluctuations may have lower levels of endemism, as species may not have had sufficient time to evolve unique adaptations before being subjected to new environmental pressures. For example, tropical rainforests like the Amazon and the Congo Basin have remained relatively stable over millions of years, leading to high levels of endemism due to the uninterrupted evolutionary processes in these biodiverse ecosystems.

Endemism is also an essential consideration in conservation biogeography. Endemic species are often more vulnerable to extinction than widespread species because they are confined to limited areas and may have small population sizes. Any changes in their habitat, whether due to natural events or human activities, can have disproportionately large impacts on these species. Habitat destruction, climate change, and invasive species are significant threats to endemic species. For instance, many endemic species in Madagascar, such as the

lemurs and the baobab trees, are at risk due to deforestation and habitat fragmentation. Conservation efforts in regions with high levels of endemism often prioritize protecting these species because their extinction would result in a complete loss of unique biodiversity that cannot be found elsewhere.

Additionally, endemism hotspots are crucial for global biodiversity conservation strategies. Conservation biogeographers identify regions that have high concentrations of endemic species, particularly those facing severe threats, to prioritize conservation efforts. For instance, Conservation International has identified 36 biodiversity hotspots worldwide, including places like the Western Ghats in India and New Zealand, both of which are home to a large number of endemic species. These hotspots typically have experienced high levels of habitat loss and require urgent conservation action to prevent further biodiversity declines. By focusing on these areas, conservationists aim to protect the unique species and ecosystems that are most at risk of extinction.

10.3.4 HOTSPOTS OF BIODIVERSITY

Biodiversity hotspots are regions that are exceptionally rich in species diversity, especially in terms of endemic species, but are also experiencing extreme threats from human activities. This concept was first introduced by Norman Myers in 1988 to focus conservation efforts on areas where the greatest number of unique species could be protected with limited resources. Since then, the biodiversity hotspot framework has become a central strategy for global conservation, aimed at prioritizing regions where urgent action is needed to protect the most significant levels of biodiversity under threat.

Definition and Criteria of Biodiversity Hotspots

A biodiversity hotspot must meet two strict criteria:

- 1. **High Levels of Endemism:** A region must have at least 1,500 species of vascular plants (about 0.5% of the world's total) as endemics, meaning species that are found nowhere else on Earth.
- 2. **High Degree of Threat:** The area must have lost at least 70% of its original natural habitat, placing its biodiversity under severe pressure from human activities like agriculture, urbanization, deforestation, and climate change.

As of today, 36 biodiversity hotspots have been identified globally, representing just 2.3% of Earth's land surface. Despite their small size, these regions contain more than 50% of the world's plant species and over 42% of terrestrial vertebrates as endemics. The loss of biodiversity in these areas would result in the extinction of a disproportionately large number of species that exist nowhere else on Earth.

Geographical Spread of Hotspots

The identified biodiversity hotspots span various types of ecosystems, including tropical rainforests, mountain ranges, islands, and Mediterranean-type ecosystems. They are distributed across different continents, but most are concentrated in tropical and subtropical regions, where species diversity and endemism are particularly high. Here are some notable examples of biodiversity hotspots:

- 1. **Tropical Forest Hotspots:** These include the Amazon Rainforest, the Atlantic Forest in Brazil, and the Congo Basin. These regions harbour vast numbers of species, many of which are endemic. For example, the Amazon is home to approximately 40,000 plant species, 1,300 bird species, and 430 mammal species, many of which are found nowhere else.
- 2. **Island Hotspots:** Islands like Madagascar, the Philippines, and the Caribbean Islands are recognized as major hotspots due to their isolated environments, which have allowed unique species to evolve. Madagascar alone has a remarkable number of endemic species, including over 90% of its wildlife—for example, the famous lemurs and unique plant species like the baobabs.
- 3. **Mountain Range Hotspots:** Mountain ranges like the Himalayas and the Andes are also biodiversity hotspots. In these areas, elevational gradients allow for varied

ecosystems, supporting a diverse range of species. The Tropical Andes, for example, are home to an estimated 20,000 plant species, 40% of which are endemic to the region.

4. **Mediterranean-Type Ecosystems:** These ecosystems are found in regions with hot, dry summers and mild, wet winters, such as the California Floristic Province and the Mediterranean Basin. Despite covering small areas, these regions contain high levels of plant diversity, much of it endemic. The Mediterranean Basin is home to 13,000 endemic plant species, making it one of the richest plant biodiversity regions in the world.

Ecological Significance of Hotspots

The extraordinary levels of biodiversity in hotspots are largely due to the wide range of ecological niches, the long periods of climatic stability, and isolation, which have allowed species to evolve and specialize over millions of years. Hotspots are often characterized by:

Species Richness: These areas contain a vast array of species, often in densities far higher than in other parts of the world. This richness includes not only charismatic megafauna, such as tigers or elephants, but also lesser-known but ecologically crucial organisms like insects, fungi, and amphibians.

Endemism: The isolated nature of many hotspots, whether due to island geography, mountainous terrain, or unique climate conditions, fosters the evolution of species that exist nowhere else. This makes hotspots invaluable for the preservation of Earth's evolutionary history.

Ecosystem Services: These regions provide vital ecosystem services that benefit humanity, including climate regulation (e.g., carbon sequestration by tropical forests), water purification, soil stabilization, and pollination. The loss of these ecosystems would not only result in species extinctions but would also have profound impacts on human livelihoods and economies.

Threats Facing Biodiversity Hotspots

Despite their ecological importance, biodiversity hotspots are under serious threat from a variety of human activities, primarily due to habitat destruction. The two main drivers of biodiversity loss in these areas are:

Deforestation and Habitat Loss: Agriculture, logging, and urbanization are the largest causes of habitat destruction in biodiversity hotspots. For instance, in Southeast Asia, deforestation driven by palm oil plantations has led to the loss of large tracts of forest in the Indo-Burma hotspot, threatening species like the Sumatran orangutan and various bird species.

Climate Change: Many biodiversity hotspots are located in regions highly vulnerable to climate change. Warming temperatures, changing rainfall patterns, and increased frequency of extreme weather events threaten ecosystems that may not be able to adapt quickly enough. Alpine species in the Himalayas or coral reefs in the Coral Triangle are particularly at risk from climate change.

Invasive Species: Many hotspots are also vulnerable to biological invasions, where nonnative species outcompete or prey on native species. In places like Madagascar and the Hawaiian Islands, invasive species such as rats and invasive plants have significantly altered the native ecosystems, leading to declines or extinctions of endemic species.

Conservation Efforts in Hotspots

Because biodiversity hotspots harbour so many species under threat, they are a focal point for global conservation efforts. Strategies to protect these regions often involve:

Establishing Protected Areas: Governments and conservation organizations have worked to create national parks and reserves to safeguard biodiversity. For example, Costa Rica has established a vast network of protected areas that cover about 25% of its land area, part of the Mesoamerican hotspot.

Sustainable Development Initiatives: Conservation organizations work with local communities to promote sustainable agricultural practices, eco-tourism, and forestry practices. In the Western Ghats of India, for instance, efforts to involve local farmers in conservation efforts have led to the protection of critical forest corridors.

Restoration Projects: In areas where natural habitats have been degraded, restoration ecology plays a crucial role. Efforts to restore native vegetation and ecosystems in regions like the Atlantic Forest of Brazil aim to rebuild habitat for the numerous endemic species that have lost much of their original environment.

Global Conservation Campaigns: Initiatives like Conservation International's Global Conservation Hotspots Initiative and the Critical Ecosystem Partnership Fund (CEPF) focus on channelling resources to these areas to protect endangered species and restore ecosystems. These programs work in collaboration with local governments, NGOs, and indigenous communities.

Importance of Hotspot Conservation

Conserving biodiversity hotspots is critical not only for preserving species diversity but also for ensuring the health and sustainability of ecosystems that millions of people depend on. Because of their rich biological resources, these areas play a crucial role in stabilizing climate, supporting water cycles, and maintaining ecosystem services that are essential for human well-being. By protecting hotspots, conservation efforts help to mitigate global biodiversity loss while also contributing to climate change mitigation and resilience strategies.

10.4 SUMMARY

Conservation biogeography integrates principles of biogeography, ecology, and conservation biology to protect biodiversity by understanding the spatial patterns of species and ecosystems. Key components include prioritization, reserve design, endemism, and the identification of biodiversity hotspots, which guide conservation efforts in areas where biodiversity is under severe threat.

Prioritization in conservation biogeography involves strategically allocating resources to areas, species, or ecosystems most in need of protection. It focuses on regions with high species richness, particularly biodiversity hotspots, and species that are evolutionarily distinct or endangered. It also considers the potential impact of future threats, such as climate change, by identifying areas like climate refugia, where species can survive in the long term. Effective

prioritization ensures that limited conservation resources maximize biodiversity protection by focusing on areas of critical importance.

Reserve design is a fundamental tool in conservation biogeography, aimed at establishing protected areas that conserve species and ecosystems. Larger reserves tend to support more species and maintain viable populations, but connectivity between reserves is also vital to ensure species can migrate and maintain genetic diversity. The concept of representativeness guides the selection of reserves to ensure that different ecosystems and species are protected, while climate resilience is increasingly incorporated to account for environmental changes. Proper reserve design balances ecological needs with practical constraints, making it a cornerstone of sustainable conservation planning.

Endemism is the occurrence of species that are native to and restricted to a specific geographic region, making them particularly important in conservation efforts. Endemic species, which are often confined to isolated or specialized habitats, are highly vulnerable to extinction due to their limited range and specific environmental requirements. Conservation biogeography emphasizes the protection of endemic species because their extinction represents the irreversible loss of unique biodiversity. Regions with high levels of endemism, such as islands and mountainous regions, are often priority areas for conservation.

Biodiversity hotspots are regions with exceptionally high levels of species diversity and endemism, but that are also facing severe threats from human activities. These hotspots represent just 2.3% of Earth's land surface but contain more than half of the world's plant species and a significant proportion of animal species. Protecting hotspots is crucial for preserving global biodiversity, as the loss of habitat in these regions could result in the extinction of numerous species. Conservation efforts in hotspots often focus on establishing protected areas, restoring degraded ecosystems, and promoting sustainable land use to ensure that these ecologically vital regions are safeguarded for future generations.

10.5 GLOSSARY

Biodiversity Hotspot: A region with a high level of endemic species and significant habitat loss. These areas are prioritized for conservation due to their rich biodiversity and high threat levels.

Endemism: The condition in which species are native to and restricted to a particular geographic area. Endemic species are found nowhere else, making them especially vulnerable to extinction.

Species-Area Relationship: A biogeographic principle that states larger areas generally support more species due to increased habitat diversity and lower extinction risks.

Metapopulation: A group of spatially separated populations of the same species that interact through migration. In reserve design, connectivity between habitat patches is crucial for maintaining metapopulation dynamics.

Connectivity: The degree to which different habitats or reserves are linked, allowing species to migrate, disperse, and maintain genetic diversity. Corridors or connected reserves are essential for long-term species survival.

Climate Refugia: Areas where species are expected to survive or retreat under changing climate conditions. These zones are critical for ensuring the resilience of biodiversity to global climate change.

Conservation Prioritization: The process of allocating limited conservation resources to regions, species, or ecosystems that are most in need of protection, often based on criteria like endemism, species richness, or threat levels.

Representativeness: The principle that a reserve should include a range of ecosystems and species to reflect the full spectrum of biodiversity in a region. Ensuring representativeness is crucial for effective conservation planning.

SLOSS Debate: A conservation debate over whether a Single Large Or Several Small (SLOSS) reserve is more effective in conserving biodiversity. The choice depends on the species' habitat needs and the specific conservation goals.

Habitat Fragmentation: The process by which large, continuous habitats are divided into smaller, isolated patches due to human activities. Fragmentation is a major threat to biodiversity, often addressed in reserve design through connectivity measures.

Adaptive Radiation: The evolutionary process where a single species evolves into multiple species, each adapted to a different ecological niche. This often occurs in isolated regions, leading to high levels of endemism.

Ecological Niche: The role or position of a species within its environment, including its habitat, resource use, and interactions with other species. Understanding a species' niche is important for designing effective reserves that meet its ecological needs.

10.6 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. What is the primary criterion for a region to be classified as a biodiversity hotspot?

- a) High number of endangered species
- b) More than 1,500 endemic vascular plant species and loss of over 70% of its original habitat
- c) High levels of pollution
- d) Low human population density

Answer: b) More than 1,500 endemic vascular plant species and loss of over 70% of its original habitat

2. What is the main goal of conservation prioritization?

a) To protect species based on their size

b) To allocate conservation resources to regions, species, or ecosystems most at risk of extinction

- c) To increase tourism in natural areas
- d) To create more zoos and wildlife parks

Answer: b) To allocate conservation resources to regions, species, or ecosystems most at risk of extinction

3. Which of the following best describes endemism?

a) Species that migrate across continents

b) Species that are found in multiple continents

c) Species that are restricted to a specific geographic location and are not found anywhere else

d) Species that are common in urban areas

Answer: c) Species that are restricted to a specific geographic location and are not found anywhere else

- 4. In reserve design, what does the concept of "connectivity" refer to?
- a) The ability of species to survive in urban areas

b) The linkages between different habitats or reserves allowing species to move and maintain genetic diversity

- c) The relationship between biodiversity and climate change
- d) The number of roads that connect national parks

Answer: b) The linkages between different habitats or reserves allow species to move and maintain genetic diversity

- 5. Which of the following is a key threat to biodiversity in hotspots?
- a) Industrial pollution
- b) Habitat loss and fragmentation
- c) Cold climates
- d) Lack of human settlement

Answer: b) Habitat loss and fragmentation

6. What is the "SLOSS" debate in conservation biogeography?

- a) A debate about climate change impacts on biodiversity
- b) A debate on whether single large or several small reserves are better for conservation
- c) A discussion on how to prevent species invasions

d) A method for measuring species diversity in tropical forests

Answer: b) A debate on whether a single large or several small reserves are better for conservation

7. Why are endemic species particularly vulnerable to extinction?

a) They are migratory and often get lost

b) They have limited ranges and are restricted to specific geographic locations, making them more sensitive to habitat loss

c) They are more likely to interbreed with other species

d) They are abundant in multiple ecosystems

Answer: b) They have limited ranges and are restricted to specific geographic locations, making them more sensitive to habitat loss

8. Which region is known for having a high level of endemism and being a biodiversity hotspot?

- a) Antarctica
- b) Amazon Rainforest
- c) Sahara Desert
- d) North American Prairie

Answer: b) Amazon Rainforest

10.7 REFERENCES

 Ball, I. R., Possingham, H. P., & Watts, M. (2009). Marxan and relatives: Software for spatial conservation prioritization. In Spatial conservation prioritization: Quantitative methods and computational tools (pp. 185-195). Oxford University Press.

- Brooks, T. M., Mittermeier, R. A., Da Fonseca, G. A., Gerlach, J., Hoffmann, M., Lamoreux, J. F., ... & Rodrigues, A. S. (2006). Global biodiversity conservation priorities. Science, 313(5783), 58-61.
- Costanza, R., d'Arge, R., De Groot, R., Farber, S., Grasso, M., Hannon, B., ... & Sutton, P. (1997). The value of the world's ecosystem services and natural capital. Nature, 387(6630), 253-260.
- Eken, G., Bennun, L., Brooks, T. M., Darwall, W., Fishpool, L. D., Foster, M., ... & Spector, S. (2004). Key biodiversity areas as site conservation targets. BioScience, 54(12), 1110-1118.
- Frankham, R., Ballou, J. D., & Briscoe, D. A. (2002). Introduction to conservation genetics. Cambridge University Press.
- IUCN. (2021). The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species. Retrieved from IUCN Red List
- Margules, C. R., & Pressey, R. L. (2000). Systematic conservation planning. Nature, 405(6783), 243-253.
- Moilanen, A., Wilson, K. A., & Possingham, H. P. (2009). Spatial conservation prioritization: Quantitative methods and computational tools. Oxford University Press.
- Myers, N., Mittermeier, R. A., Mittermeier, C. G., Da Fonseca, G. A., & Kent, J. (2000). Biodiversity hotspots for conservation priorities. Nature, 403(6772), 853-858.
- Olson, D. M., & Dinerstein, E. (2002). The Global 200: Priority ecoregions for global conservation. Annals of the Missouri Botanical Garden, 199-224.
- Rodrigues, A. S., Pilgrim, J. D., Lamoreux, J. F., Hoffmann, M., & Brooks, T. M. (2006). The value of the IUCN Red List for conservation. Trends in Ecology & Evolution, 21(2), 71-76.
- Turner, W., Spector, S., Gardiner, N., Fladeland, M., Sterling, E., & Steininger, M. (2003). Remote sensing for biodiversity science and conservation. Trends in Ecology & Evolution, 18(6), 306-314.
- Bennett, A. F. (2003). Linkages in the landscape: The role of corridors and connectivity in wildlife conservation. IUCN.
- Brandon, K., & Wells, M. (1992). Planning for people and parks: Design dilemmas. World Development, 20(4), 557-570.

- Chester, C. C. (2006). Conservation across borders: Biodiversity in an interdependent world. Island Press.
- Diamond, J. M. (1975). The island dilemma: Lessons of modern biogeographic studies for the design of natural reserves. Biological Conservation, 7(2), 129-146.
- Hannah, L., Midgley, G., Andelman, S., Araújo, M., Hughes, G., Martinez-Meyer, E.,
 ... & Pearson, R. (2007). Protected area needs in a changing climate. Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment, 5(3), 131-138.
- Laurance, W. F., & Yensen, E. (1991). Predicting the impacts of edge effects in fragmented habitats. Biological Conservation, 55(1), 77-92.
- Margules, C. R., & Pressey, R. L. (2000). Systematic conservation planning. Nature, 405(6783), 243-253.
- Miller, K., Chang, E., & Johnson, N. (2001). Defining common ground for the Mesoamerican Biological Corridor. World Resources Institute.
- Noss, R. F. (1992). The Wildlands Project: Land conservation strategy. Wild Earth, 8-18.
- Salafsky, N., Margoluis, R., Redford, K. H., & Robinson, J. G. (2002). Improving the practice of conservation: A conceptual framework and research agenda for conservation science. Conservation Biology, 16(6), 1469-1479.
- Treves, A., & Karanth, K. U. (2003). Human-carnivore conflict and perspectives on carnivore management worldwide. Conservation Biology, 17(6), 1491-1499.

10.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

- 1. How does conservation biogeography utilize spatial data and ecological principles to prioritize regions for biodiversity conservation?
- 2. What factors should be considered in the design of nature reserves to effectively conserve biodiversity, and how can these factors be balanced with human interests?
- 3. In what ways does endemism influence conservation strategies, and what specific challenges do conservationists face when protecting endemic species?

- 4. What criteria define biodiversity hotspots, and why are these areas considered crucial for global conservation efforts?
- 5. How does habitat fragmentation affect species diversity and ecosystem stability, and what strategies can be employed in reserve design to mitigate these effects?
- 6. What is the significance of representativeness in reserve design, and how can conservation planners ensure that diverse ecosystems and species are adequately protected?
- 7. Discuss the Single Large or Several Small (SLOSS) debate in reserve design, including its implications for species conservation and ecosystem management.
- 8. How do human activities contribute to the degradation of biodiversity hotspots, and what conservation strategies can effectively address these challenges?
- 9. What role do climate change and shifting environmental conditions play in the conservation of biodiversity hotspots, and how can adaptive management strategies be employed?
- 10. In what ways can advancements in technology and interdisciplinary approaches enhance conservation biogeography and improve biodiversity protection strategies in the future?

BLOCK 4: APPLIED BIOGEOGRAPHY

UNIT 11: BIO-GEOGRAPHIC TOOLS AND TECHNIQUES: GIS AND REMOTE SENSING

11.1 OBJECTIVES

11.2 INTRODUCTION

11.3 BIO-GEOGRAPHIC TOOLS AND TECHNIQUES: GIS AND REMOTE SENSING

11.4 SUMMARY

11.5 GLOSSARY

11.6 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

11.7 REFERENCES

11.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

11.1 OBJECTIVES

- Understand the basic concepts and principles of GIS and remote sensing.
- Explain the applications of GIS and remote sensing in bio-geography.
- Utilize GIS software for basic spatial data analysis.
- Interpret and analyze remote sensing imagery for biological and ecological studies.

11.2 INTRODUCTION

In today's rapidly evolving scientific landscape, the integration of advanced technologies has become indispensable in understanding and managing the natural world. Among these technological advancements, Geographic Information Systems (GIS) and remote sensing stand out as powerful tools that have revolutionized the field of bio-geography. These tools enable researchers and scientists to study the spatial aspects of biological phenomena with unprecedented precision and detail.

GIS is a computer-based system that allows for the capturing, storing, checking, and displaying data related to positions on the Earth's surface. By integrating various types of data, GIS provides a versatile platform for analyzing spatial relationships and patterns, making it an invaluable tool in bio-geographic research. This technology supports a wide range of applications, from mapping species distributions and habitat types to modelling ecological processes and analyzing the impacts of environmental changes.

Remote sensing, on the other hand, involves the acquisition of information about an object or phenomenon without making physical contact with it. Using satellite imagery, aerial photography, and other forms of sensor data, remote sensing provides a bird's-eye view of the Earth's surface. This capability is crucial for monitoring large-scale environmental changes, such as deforestation, urban sprawl, and climate change, as well as for detailed studies of specific ecosystems and landscapes.

11.3 BIO-GEOGRAPHIC TOOLS AND TECHNIQUES: GIS AND REMOTE SENSING

Definition and Overview

Geographic Information Systems (GIS) are advanced computer-based tools designed to collect, store, manage, analyze, and visualize spatial or geographic data. By integrating various types of data, GIS provides a robust platform for understanding complex relationships and patterns across different geographic locations. This technology has become indispensable in a wide range of fields, including environmental science, urban planning, public health, agriculture, and more.

At its core, GIS is built upon the concept of spatial data, which refers to any data that is related to a specific location on the Earth's surface. This spatial data can take many forms, such as:

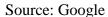
- a. Maps: Traditional paper maps can be digitized and incorporated into GIS, providing a visual representation of geographic areas and features.
- b. Satellite Images: High-resolution images captured by satellites offer a detailed and accurate view of the Earth's surface, enabling the monitoring of environmental changes and land use patterns.
- c. Aerial Photographs: Images taken from aircraft provide another source of spatial data, often used for detailed local studies and urban planning.
- d. Tabular Data: Information stored in tables, such as census data, environmental measurements, and demographic statistics, can be linked to specific geographic locations within a GIS.

GIS enables the integration of these diverse data types into a single, cohesive system. This integration allows for comprehensive analysis and visualization, making it easier to identify trends, relationships, and patterns that might not be apparent from individual datasets alone.

Components of GIS

Fig 11.1: Components of GIS





1. Hardware: Hardware forms the physical foundation of a GIS system. It includes:

- Computers: Desktop or server computers are used to run GIS software and store spatial and attribute data. These computers need to have adequate processing power, memory, and storage capacity to handle large datasets and complex analyses.
- GPS Devices: Global Positioning System (GPS) devices are used for field data collection, providing accurate location information. Handheld GPS units, smartphones with GPS capabilities, and high-precision GPS systems are commonly used.
- Scanners and Digitizers: These are used to convert paper maps and documents into digital format. Scanners capture images of the documents, while digitizers allow manual tracing of map features.
- Plotters and Printers: High-quality plotters and printers are used to produce large-format maps and other visual outputs from GIS software.
- Networking Equipment: Routers, switches, and network cables facilitate data sharing and communication between GIS users and systems.

2. Software: GIS software is the set of tools that enable users to perform various GIS operations. Commonly used GIS software includes:

- ArcGIS: A comprehensive and widely used GIS software suite developed by Esri. It offers powerful tools for mapping, spatial analysis, and data management.
- QGIS: An open-source GIS application that provides a wide range of GIS functionalities. It is highly customizable and supports various plugins.

- GRASS GIS: Another open-source GIS software known for its advanced geospatial modeling and analysis capabilities. It is particularly strong in handling raster data and performing geostatistical analyses.
- ERDAS IMAGINE: Specialized software for remote sensing applications, offering tools for image processing, photogrammetry, and spatial modeling.
- ENVI: A software suite for processing and analyzing geospatial imagery, widely used in remote sensing applications.
- 3. Data: Data is the core component of GIS, encompassing both spatial and attribute data.
 - Spatial Data: Represents the geographic location and shape of features on the Earth's surface. It can be in vector or raster format.
 - Vector Data: Consists of points, lines, and polygons. Examples include city locations (points), rivers (lines), and land parcels (polygons).
 - Raster Data: Consists of grid cells or pixels, each with a value representing information such as elevation, temperature, or land cover.

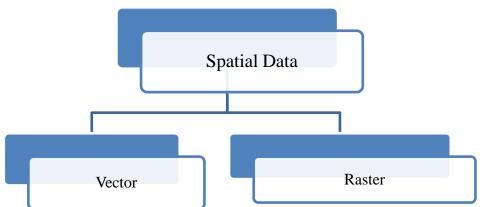


Fig 11.2: Data type

- Attribute Data: Provides descriptive information about spatial features. For example, attribute data for a city point might include population, area, and economic status.
- Sources of Data: Data can be obtained from various sources, including satellite imagery, aerial photography, GPS surveys, existing maps, and government databases.

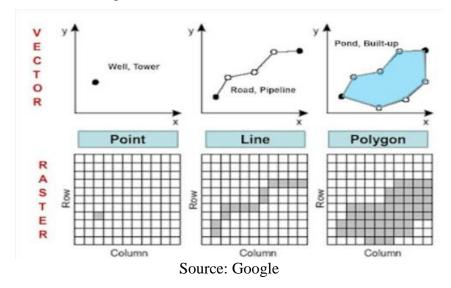


Fig11. 3: Raster and Vector Data

4. People: People are essential to the functioning of a GIS. They include:

- GIS Professionals: These are trained individuals who design, implement, and manage GIS projects. They include GIS analysts, specialists, and developers.
- Users: People who use GIS software to perform specific tasks. They may not have formal GIS training but use GIS tools in their work, such as urban planners, environmental scientists, and emergency responders.
- Decision Makers: Individuals who use GIS outputs to inform decisions. They rely on GIS professionals to provide accurate and relevant spatial information.

5. Methods: Methods refer to the techniques and procedures used to analyze spatial data and solve geographic problems. Key methods include:

- Data Collection and Input: Methods for gathering and entering spatial and attribute data into the GIS. This includes field surveys, remote sensing, and digitizing paper maps.
- Data Management: Techniques for storing, organizing, and maintaining spatial data. This involves database design, data integration, and quality control.
- Spatial Analysis: Methods for examining the relationships and patterns in spatial data. Common techniques include buffering, overlay analysis, and spatial interpolation.

- Geostatistics: Advanced statistical methods for analyzing spatial data, such as kriging and spatial autocorrelation.
- Modelling and Simulation: Techniques for creating representations of real-world processes and predicting future scenarios. Examples include hydrological modelling, habitat suitability modelling, and urban growth simulation.
- Visualization: Methods for displaying spatial data in maps, graphs, and charts. Effective visualization helps communicate complex spatial information clearly and effectively.

By understanding these components, students can appreciate how GIS integrates technology, data, and human expertise to analyze and interpret spatial information, enabling informed decision-making in biogeography and related fields.

GIS Data Types

GIS data is categorized into two main types: vector data and raster data.

Vector Data: Vector data represents geographic features using points, lines, and polygons.

Points: Specific locations defined by coordinates. Used for mapping individual trees, landmarks, etc.

Lines: Linear features defined by connected points. Used for mapping rivers, roads, migration routes, etc.

Polygons: Area features with defined boundaries. Used for mapping protected areas, land cover types, administrative regions, etc.

Advantages:

- (i) High precision for discrete features.
- (ii) Supports complex spatial relationships.
- (iii) Efficient storage for sparse datasets.

Limitations:

- (i) Complex to handle and process for large datasets.
- (ii) Less suitable for continuous phenomena.

Unit - 11: BIO-GEOGRAPHIC TOOLS AND TECHNIQUES: GIS AND REMOTE SENSING Page: 234

Raster Data: Raster data represents geographic information as a grid of cells or pixels, each with a specific value.

(i) Grid Cells/Pixels: Matrix of cells with values representing attributes. Used for satellite images, elevation models, etc.

(ii) Satellite Images: Raster data from satellite sensors, useful for monitoring land cover changes, vegetation health, etc.

(iii) Digital Elevation Models (DEMs): Raster datasets representing elevation. Used for terrain analysis, watershed modelling, etc.

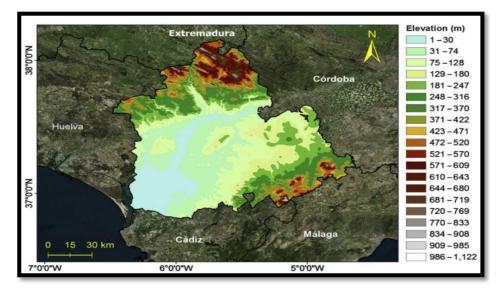
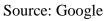


Fig11. 4: Digital Elevation Model (DEM)



Advantages:

- (i) Ideal for continuous phenomena (e.g., temperature, elevation).
- (ii) Simplified mathematical and statistical analysis.
- (iii) Directly compatible with remote sensing data.

Limitations:

- (i) Resolution-dependent quality and accuracy.
- (ii) High storage requirements for high-resolution data.

Unit - 11: BIO-GEOGRAPHIC TOOLS AND TECHNIQUES: GIS AND REMOTE SENSING Page: 235 (iii) Less precise for discrete features compared to vector data.

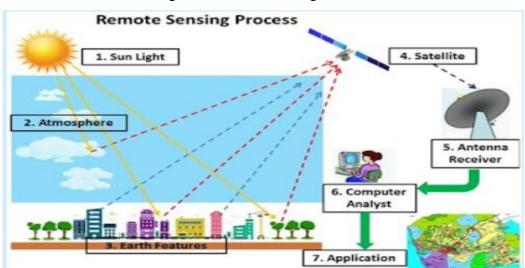
Choosing Between Vector and Raster Data

Vector Data: Best for features with precise boundaries and discrete locations.

Raster Data: Best for continuous phenomena and surface representations.

Remote Sensing

Remote sensing is the science of obtaining information about objects or areas from a distance, typically using satellites or aircraft. This process involves detecting and measuring radiation, such as visible light and infrared, that is reflected or emitted from the Earth's surface.





Source: Google

How Remote Sensing Works

Remote sensing systems detect electromagnetic radiation that interacts with the Earth's surface and atmosphere. This interaction provides valuable data that can be used for various applications, including environmental monitoring, agriculture, forestry, urban planning, and disaster management.

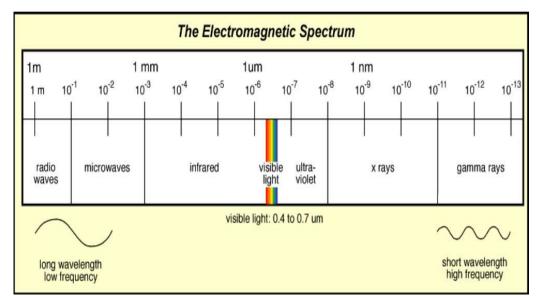
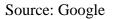


Fig11. 6: Electromagnetic Spectrum



Principles of Remote Sensing

Sensors: Sensors are devices that detect and record energy. They are the critical components of remote sensing systems and can be classified into different types based on the energy they detect and the way they operate.

Types of Sensors:

(a) Optical Sensors: Detect visible, near-infrared, and shortwave infrared light.

(b) Thermal Sensors: Detect longwave infrared radiation, which is emitted by objects as heat.

(c) Microwave Sensors: Detect microwave radiation, which can penetrate clouds and provide data in all weather conditions.

(d) Multispectral Sensors: Capture data in multiple specific wavelengths across the electromagnetic spectrum.

(e) Hyperspectral Sensors: Capture data in many narrow, contiguous spectral bands, providing detailed spectral information.

Platforms: Platforms are vehicles or structures that carry sensors, enabling the collection of remote sensing data from different altitudes and angles.

Types of Platforms:

(a) Satellites: Orbit the Earth and provide global coverage. Examples include Landsat, MODIS, and Sentinel satellites.

(b) Aircraft: Include manned airplanes and unmanned aerial vehicles (drones) that fly at various altitudes and offer high-resolution imagery.

(c) Drones: Small, unmanned aerial systems that can be deployed for detailed, site-specific data collection.

(d) Ground-Based Platforms: Include towers or other fixed structures equipped with sensors for local monitoring.

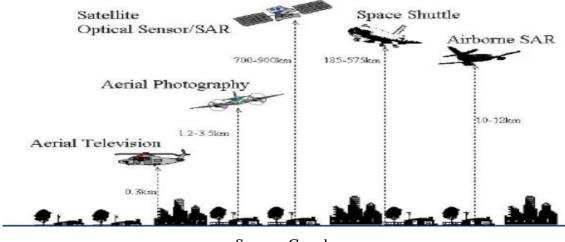


Fig 11.7: Different Types of Platforms

Source: Google

Electromagnetic Spectrum

The electromagnetic spectrum encompasses the range of wavelengths of electromagnetic radiation. Remote sensing typically utilizes several key portions of this spectrum to gather different types of information about the Earth's surface.

Key Spectral Bands:

(a) Visible Light (400-700 nm): Includes blue, green, and red light. Visible light is used for natural colour imaging and vegetation analysis.

(b) Near-Infrared (700-1300 nm): Useful for assessing vegetation health and water content.

Unit - 11: BIO-GEOGRAPHIC TOOLS AND TECHNIQUES: GIS AND REMOTE SENSING Page: 238

(c) Shortwave Infrared (1300-3000 nm): Used for mineral identification and soil moisture analysis.

(d) Thermal Infrared (8-14 μ m): Measures heat emitted from the Earth's surface, useful for temperature mapping and detecting thermal anomalies.

(e) Microwave (1 mm - 1 m): Penetrates clouds and provides data in all weather conditions. Used in radar and LiDAR systems for topographic mapping and surface roughness analysis.

Types of Remote Sensing

(a) **Passive Remote Sensing:** Passive remote sensing involves sensors that detect natural energy that is reflected or emitted from the Earth's surface. The most common source of energy for passive remote sensing is sunlight.

Principles of Passive Remote Sensing:

- Sensors measure the intensity of radiation in different spectral bands as it reflects off or is emitted from objects.
- The data captured by passive sensors is influenced by factors like the angle of sunlight, surface properties, and atmospheric conditions.

Applications:

(a) Land Cover and Land Use Mapping: Identifying different types of vegetation, urban areas, and water bodies.

(b) Vegetation Analysis: Assessing plant health, biomass, and chlorophyll content using indices like the Normalized Difference Vegetation Index (NDVI).

(c) Climate Studies: Monitoring Sea surface temperatures, ice cover, and atmospheric conditions.

Active Remote Sensing: Active remote sensing involves sensors that emit their own energy and measure the reflection off the Earth's surface. This type of remote sensing is useful for obtaining data regardless of the time of day or weather conditions.

Principles of Active Remote Sensing:

(a) Sensors emit pulses of energy, usually in the microwave or laser range.

(b) The emitted energy interacts with the Earth's surface and is reflected back to the sensor.

(c) The time delay and intensity of the reflected signal provide information about the surface characteristics.

Types of Active Remote Sensing:

(a) Radar (Radio Detection and Ranging): Uses microwave pulses to measure the distance and characteristics of objects. It is used for surface mapping, topographic analysis, and monitoring of dynamic phenomena like soil moisture and vegetation structure.

(b) LiDAR (Light Detection and Ranging): Uses laser pulses to create high-resolution, threedimensional maps of the Earth's surface. It is used for topographic mapping, vegetation structure analysis, and urban planning.

Applications:

(a) Topographic Mapping: Creating detailed elevation models for terrain analysis and infrastructure planning.

(b) Vegetation Structure Analysis: Measuring Forest canopy height, density, and biomass.

(c) Disaster Management: Monitoring flood extents, landslides, and earthquake impacts.

By understanding these principles and types of remote sensing, students can appreciate how remote sensing technology is utilized to collect and analyze data for various biogeographic and environmental applications.

Remote Sensing and GIS as tool and techniques in Biogeography

Remote sensing and Geographic Information Systems (GIS) are powerful tools that have revolutionized the field of biogeography. They enable scientists to study the distribution, dynamics, and interactions of living organisms across different spatial and temporal scales. Here is a detailed explanation of how these technologies are used in biogeography:

1. Mapping and Monitoring Biodiversity

Remote Sensing:

(a) Land Cover Classification: Satellite imagery and aerial photographs are used to classify and map different types of vegetation and land cover. Multispectral and hyperspectral sensors can differentiate between various vegetation types based on their spectral signatures.

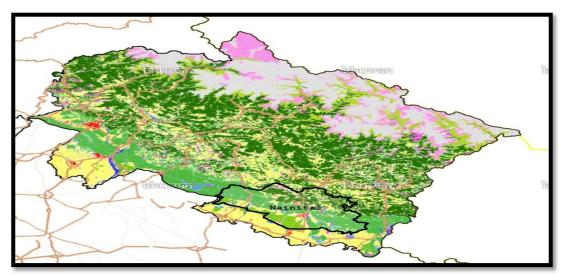


Fig.11. 8: Land Cover Classification of Uttarakhand

Source: Bhuvan Portal

(b) Habitat Mapping: Remote sensing data helps identify and map habitats, providing crucial information about habitat extent, condition, and changes over time.

(c)Biodiversity Hotspots: By analyzing remote sensing data, researchers can identify areas with high biodiversity, known as biodiversity hotspots, which are critical for conservation efforts.

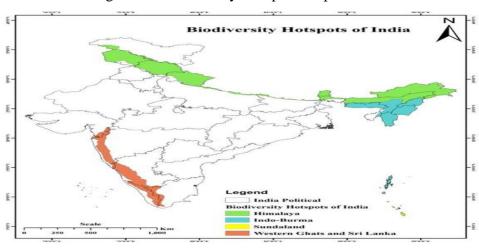


Fig.11. 9: Biodiversity Hotspots Map of India

Source: Google

Geographic Information System

(a) Species Distribution Mapping: GIS is used to map the geographic distribution of species based on field observations and remote sensing data. This helps in understanding species ranges and identifying areas of high species richness.

(b) Habitat Suitability Modelling: GIS combines environmental variables (e.g., climate, topography, soil type) with species occurrence data to model habitat suitability and predict potential distribution areas for species.

(c) Change Detection: GIS tools analyze time-series remote sensing data to detect changes in land cover and habitat, helping to monitor the impacts of environmental changes and human activities on biodiversity.

2. Conservation Planning and Management

Remote Sensing:

(a) Protected Area Monitoring: Remote sensing provides up-to-date information on land cover changes within and around protected areas. This helps in assessing the effectiveness of conservation measures and detecting illegal activities such as deforestation and poaching.

(b) Wildlife Corridors: Satellite data helps identify and map wildlife corridors that connect fragmented habitats, ensuring gene flow and species movement.

Geographic Information System:

(a) Reserve Design: GIS is used to design nature reserves by analyzing spatial data on species distribution, habitat types, and human threats. This ensures that reserves cover critical habitats and biodiversity hotspots.

(b) Gap Analysis: GIS performs gap analysis to identify areas that lack adequate protection despite being important for biodiversity. This informs the expansion of protected area networks.

(c) Management Plans: GIS helps in creating and implementing management plans for conservation areas by integrating spatial data on habitats, species, and human activities.

3. Studying Ecological Processes

Remote Sensing:

(a) Phenology Monitoring: Remote sensing monitors seasonal changes in vegetation (phenology) by analyzing time-series data. This helps in understanding plant growth cycles, flowering, and leaf fall patterns.

(b) Climate Impact Studies: Satellite data provides information on climate variables such as temperature and precipitation. This data is used to study the impacts of climate change on species distributions and ecosystem processes.

Geographic Information System

(a) Landscape Ecology: GIS analyzes landscape patterns and processes, including habitat fragmentation, connectivity, and edge effects. This helps in understanding how landscape structure influences species distributions and ecological interactions.

(b) Ecosystem Modelling: GIS integrates spatial data on biotic and abiotic factors to model ecosystem processes such as nutrient cycling, energy flow, and species interactions.

4. Detecting and Managing Invasive Species

Remote Sensing:

(a) Early Detection: Remote sensing helps detect invasive species by identifying changes in vegetation patterns and spectral signatures that indicate the presence of non-native species.

(b) Monitoring Spread: Satellite imagery tracks the spread of invasive species over time, providing data for management and control efforts.

Geographic Information System

(a) Risk Assessment: GIS combines spatial data on environmental conditions and species traits to assess the risk of invasive species establishment and spread.

(b) Management Strategies: GIS supports the development of spatially targeted management strategies, such as prioritizing areas for eradication or containment efforts.

5. Climate Change and Its Impacts

Remote Sensing:

(a) Monitoring Climate Variables: Remote sensing provides data on climate variables such as temperature, precipitation, and sea level. This data is crucial for studying the impacts of climate change on ecosystems and species.

(b) Vegetation Dynamics: Remote sensing tracks changes in vegetation cover and health, helping to understand how climate change affects plant communities.

Geographic Information System

(a) Climate Modelling: GIS integrates climate models with species distribution data to predict future changes in species ranges and habitat suitability under different climate scenarios.

(b) Vulnerability Assessment: GIS assesses the vulnerability of species and ecosystems to climate change by analyzing spatial data on exposure, sensitivity, and adaptive capacity.

6. Sustainable Resource Management

Remote Sensing:

(a) Agricultural Monitoring: Remote sensing monitors crop health, soil moisture, and land use changes, supporting sustainable agriculture practices.

(b) Forest Management: Satellite data tracks deforestation, forest degradation, and forest recovery, informing sustainable forest management practices.

Geographic Information System

(a) Resource Allocation: GIS helps in the allocation of natural resources by analyzing spatial data on resource availability, demand, and environmental constraints.

(b) Impact Assessment: GIS assesses the environmental impacts of resource extraction and land use changes, supporting sustainable development planning.

Remote sensing and GIS are indispensable tools in biogeography, providing comprehensive data and powerful analytical capabilities. They enhance our understanding of the spatial patterns and processes in ecosystems, support conservation efforts, and inform sustainable management practices. By integrating these technologies, biogeographers can address complex environmental challenges and contribute to the preservation of biodiversity and ecosystem health.

11.4 SUMMARY

GIS (Geographic Information Systems) and remote sensing are pivotal tools in biogeography, enabling the detailed analysis and visualization of spatial data related to the distribution and dynamics of organisms and ecosystems. GIS integrates hardware, software, data, and methods to map and analyze spatial relationships, supporting applications like species distribution mapping, habitat suitability modelling, and conservation planning. Remote sensing, involving the collection of data from satellites or aircraft, provides critical information on land cover, vegetation health, climate variables, and environmental changes through the detection and measurement of reflected or emitted radiation across different wavelengths. Together, these technologies facilitate the monitoring of biodiversity, assessment of habitat changes, and understanding of ecological processes, thereby informing sustainable resource management and conservation strategies. By leveraging GIS and remote sensing, biogeographers can effectively address environmental challenges and contribute to the preservation of biodiversity and ecosystem health.

11.5 GLOSSARY

Ecosystem Modelling: Ecosystem modelling is the use of mathematical and computational techniques to simulate and analyze the interactions within an ecological system, predicting the effects of environmental changes and human activities on ecosystem structure and function.

Change Detection: Change detection in remote sensing is the process of identifying and analyzing differences in the state of an object or phenomenon by comparing satellite or aerial images taken at different times.

Phenology: Phenology is the study of the timing of seasonal biological events, such as flowering, migration, and breeding, about environmental changes.

Habitat Suitability: Habitat suitability refers to the appropriateness of an environment to support a particular species, based on factors like food availability, climate, and physical conditions.

Biodiversity Hotspot: A biodiversity hotspot is a region with a high level of species diversity and endemism that is also experiencing significant habitat loss and threats.

LiDAR: Light Detection and Ranging (LiDAR) is a remote sensing method that uses laser pulses to measure distances to the Earth's surface, generating precise, three-dimensional information about the shape and surface characteristics of the terrain.

RADAR: Radio Detection and Ranging (RADAR) is a remote sensing technique that uses radio waves to detect and locate objects, measuring the distance, speed, and other characteristics of objects by analyzing the returned signal.

11.6 ANSWERS TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Do you know that Phenology is the study of the timing of seasonal biological events, such as flowering, migration, and breeding, about environmental changes.

Do you know that Global Positioning System (GPS) devices are used for field data collection, providing accurate location information. Handheld GPS units, smartphones with GPS capabilities, and high-precision GPS systems are commonly used.

11.7 REFERENCES

- <u>https://www.researchgate.net/publication/270453897_Remote_Sensing_and_GIS_for_Biodiversity_Conservation/link/553f1e5b0cf294deef719356/download?_tp=eyJjb250ZXh0_Ijp7ImZpcnN0UGFnZSI6InB1YmxpY2F0aW9uIiwicGFnZSI6InB1YmxpY2F0aW9uIn_19</u>
- https://gisuop.wordpress.com/wp-content/uploads/2014/07/gis.jpg
- <u>https://www.researchgate.net/figure/Map-showing-Biodiversity-Hotspots-of-India-As-on-August-2020-Source-WII-India_fig1_355583956</u>
- Textbooks: "Geographic Information Systems and Science" by Paul A. Longley, Michael F. Goodchild, David J. Maguire, and David W. Rhind.

- Online Courses: ESRI's free GIS courses, Coursera's GIS and remote sensing courses.
- Software: QGIS (free and open-source), ArcGIS (proprietary, but with student licenses available).
- https://rsgislearn.blogspot.com/2007/05/vector-data-vs-raster-data.html
- <u>https://www.columbia.edu/~vjd1/electromag_spectrum.htm</u>
- <u>https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Electromagnetic_spectrum</u>
- <u>https://www.aimspress.com/article/doi/10.3934/geosci.2018.1.66?viewType=HTML</u>
- <u>https://majorprojects.org/resources/the-use-of-remote-sensing-to-identify-habitats-on-a-large-scale-linear-infrastructure-project/</u>
- https://gisoutlook.com/2019/05/what-is-remote-sensing-technology.html
- https://www.sciencedirect.com/topics/earth-and-planetary-sciences/digital-elevationmodel

11.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

Long Question

- 1. Explain the role of Geographic Information Systems (GIS) in biogeographic research. Discuss the different components of GIS and how they integrate to support the analysis of spatial relationships and patterns.
- 2. Describe the principles and applications of remote sensing in biogeography. How does remote sensing complement GIS in studying environmental changes and species distributions?
- 3. Discuss the advantages and limitations of vector and raster data in GIS. How do these data types influence the analysis and visualization of biogeographic information?
- 4. Explain how GIS and remote sensing are used together in conservation planning and management. Provide examples of specific applications and their impact on biodiversity conservation.

Short Question

- 1. What are the core components of GIS?
- 2. How does remote sensing detect information about objects on Earth's surface?

- 3. What types of data can be integrated into GIS?
- 4. What is the difference between vector and raster data in GIS?
- 5.Name two types of remote sensing sensors?
- 6. What is the role of GIS in species distribution mapping?
- 7. How is remote sensing used in climate change studies?
- 8. What is habitat suitability modelling in GIS?

Multiple Choice Questions

- 1. What is the primary function of GIS?
- A. Capturing and storing spatial data
- B. Analyzing and visualizing spatial relationships
- C. Both A and B
- D. None of the above
- 2. Which of the following is a type of vector data?
- A. Satellite images
- B. Digital Elevation Models (DEMs)
- C. Points, lines, and polygons
- D. Grid cells or pixels

4. Which remote sensing method uses laser pulses to create high-resolution, three-dimensional maps?

A. Radar

- B. LiDAR
- C. Multispectral imaging
- D. Thermal imaging

5. What type of remote sensing involves the use of sensors that detect natural energy reflected or emitted from the Earth's surface?

- A. Active remote sensing
- B. Passive remote sensing
- C. Multispectral remote sensing
- D. Hyperspectral remote sensing
- 6. Which component of GIS includes GPS devices used for field data collection?
- A. Hardware
- B. Software
- C. Data
- D. People
- 7. What is GIS?
- A. Global Information System
- B. Geographic Information System
- C. General Information System
- D. Geological Information System
- 8. Which of the following is NOT a component of GIS?
- A. Hardware
- B. Software
- C. Data
- D. Vehicles
- 9. What type of data is collected using remote sensing?
- A. Qualitative data

- B. Quantitative data
- C. Spatial data
- D. Temporal data
- 10. Which of the following is a commonly used GIS software?
- A. Photoshop
- B. ArcGIS
- C. Microsoft Word
- D. AutoCAD
- 11. What does GPS stand for?
- A. Global Positioning System
- B. Geographic Positioning System
- C. General Positioning System
- D. Geospatial Positioning System

12. Which type of remote sensing sensor detects visible, near-infrared, and shortwave infrared light?

- A. Optical Sensors
- B. Thermal Sensors
- C. Microwave Sensors
- D. Multispectral Sensors
- 13. Which of the following is a type of vector data?
- A. Points
- B. Pixels

C. Grid cells

D. Raster images

- 14. What is the main advantage of raster data?
- A. High precision for discrete features
- B. Ideal for continuous phenomena
- C. Supports complex spatial relationships
- D. Efficient storage for sparse datasets

15.. Which GIS component involves techniques for storing, organizing, and maintaining spatial data?

A. Hardware

- B. Software
- C. Data Management
- D. Methods
- 16. Which of the following is NOT a type of spatial data format in GIS?

A. Vector Data

- B. Raster Data
- C. Tabular Data
- D. Text Data

17. Which electromagnetic spectrum band is used for assessing vegetation health and water content?

- A. Visible Light
- B. Near-Infrared
- C. Shortwave Infrared

D. Thermal Infrared

- 18. What is the purpose of habitat suitability modelling in GIS?
- A. To map the geographic distribution of species
- B. To classify land cover types
- C. To predict potential distribution areas for species
- D. To monitor changes in land cover over time

19. Which type of remote sensing is used for monitoring land cover changes, vegetation health, and environmental changes?

- A. Passive Remote Sensing
- B. Active Remote Sensing
- C. Both Passive and Active Remote Sensing
- D. None of the above

Answer) 1. c, 2. c, 3. c, 4. b, 5. b, 6. a, 7.b, 8. d, 9.c, 10.b, 11.a, 12.a, 13.a, 14.b, 15. C, 16. D, 17. B, 18. C, 19. c

UNIT-12 FIELD METHODS IN BIOGEOGRAPHY

12.1 OBJECTIVES

12.2INTRODUCTION

12.3 FIELD METHODS IN BIOGEOGRAPHY

12.4 SUMMARY

12.5 GLOSSARY

12.6 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

12.7 REFERENCES

12.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

12.1 OBJECTIVES

After studying this unit you will be able to:

To develop an understanding of the field methods of biogeography.

To explain the major types of field methods of biogeography.

To explain in detail the main techniques and methods used in the study of field method of biogeography.

12.2 INTRODUCTION

As explained in the previous chapters, biogeography is the science that studies biological (plant and animal) species in the context of space and time. It includes the geographical distribution patterns of species and the processes that result from these patterns. Its main areas of study include the evolution of biological species on Earth, the spread of species, extinction and interactions, natural selection and biological adaptation, etc. It also studies the structure and dynamics of biological communities and ecosystems as they relate to both natural and anthropogenic processes.

The field study method is defined as a qualitative method of data collection in biogeography. Field study method refers to the techniques and methods used for study through surveys, through which an attempt is made to collect and analyze data in real form. The selection of field study method techniques to be used for a particular species or population is influenced by five major factors: Data required to achieve the objectives, spatial extent and duration of the project, Life history and population characteristics, Area terrain and vegetation, and Budget. This study is usually done in disciplines in which laboratory studies are not possible, such as environmental science, and biogeography. For example, in biogeography, researchers observe the behaviour, population, change, migration patterns, etc. of biological species in a particular area. A successful field study requires careful planning, preparation, and execution to ensure that the data collected is valid and reliable. The methods and techniques used to study biogeography include field methods (basically going to the study area). Field methods are very important techniques in the study of biogeography that help us understand how different species of organisms thrive in their habitats and what factors influence their distribution. Also, these methods help researchers understand biodiversity, ecosystem status, and the effects of climate change.

12.3 FIELD METHODS IN BIOGEOGRAPHY

Field methods in biogeography are used to understand the relationships between organisms and their environment. It involves a variety of techniques and approaches to study the distribution of species and ecosystems within a geographic location and across geological time. Some of the common field methods used in biogeography are described below.

Sampling and Field Survey Method

Transect method:

The transect sampling method is an effective and systematic method for collecting data on biological species in biogeography. In which the study area is divided into straight lines, called "transects". This transect/line is drawn in a particular habitat and data is collected from both sides of that transect/line. This transect may be straight or curved depending on the characteristics of a particular area. These lines represent different parts of the area and help in studying various types of characteristics. It may be based on environmental factors of a particular area, such as the slope of the land, diversity of vegetation, etc.

For example, if a researcher wants to study a forest ecosystem, he first divides the forest area into different parts with straight lines (transects). Then, he collects data on vegetation, animals, and soil types located on both sides of these lines. This helps in finding out the distribution of vegetation and ecological diversity of the forest area.

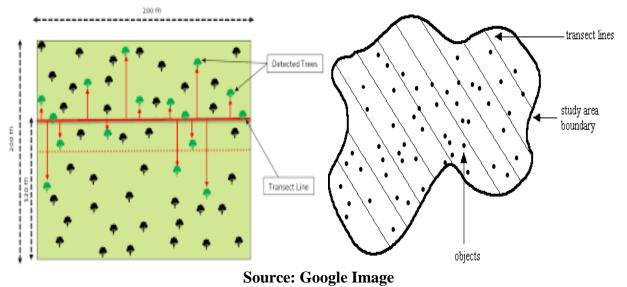


Fig: 12.1 Transects Method

Merits:

Simple and low-cost:

- This method is relatively less expensive and simple. In which only a straight line (transit) is drawn in the field and data collection requires less effort and resources.
- Knowledge of regional diversity: This method is more helpful in understanding regional environmental conditions and diversity. For example, it is possible to analyze the structure of forests, grasslands, and other types of ecosystems separately.

Demerits

- Labor and time intensive: Collection of data for survey in a wide area requires more labour and time.
- Limited data: In this method, data is collected only on a specified route, due to which some important information is missed when there is more diversity in the area.

Quadrat Method:

In biogeography, the "Quadrat Method" is a statistical technique for the study of species which is used to study the diversity, density, and distribution of vegetation. In this method, the study area is divided into small parallel quadrats. A square or rectangular frame (quadrat) of a certain size is used as a sample area for the study. This frame is placed on different quadrats in the study area and all the plants or organisms present inside it are counted. These samples represent the entire study area. This provides important information about the environment and biodiversity of a particular area, which is necessary for conservation and management.



Fig: 12.2 Quadrat Method

Source: Google Image

Merits:

- Systematic and simple: This method is well-organized and simple. In this, data is easily collected systematically by placing squares (quadrants) of a fixed size at different places in the area.
- Collection of reliable data: In this method, data is collected from small areas, which makes the data related to biodiversity and density of a particular area more reliable and accurate in analysis.

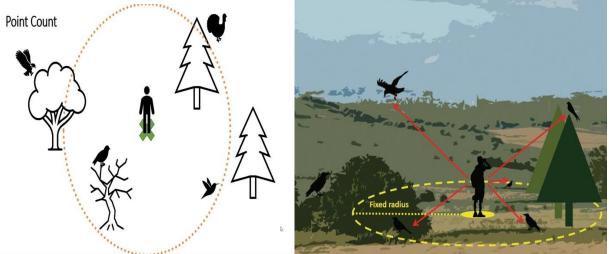
Demerits

- Time and labour intensive: To collect data from large areas, sampling needs to be done from different locations, which is time and labour intensive-.
- Limited regional information: This method does not represent the complete true status of species diversity over unevenly distributed wide areas.

Point count Method:

In biogeography, the Point Count Method is a statistical technique used in biological or environmental studies. In this method, a specific area is first selected. Then the study area is divided into smaller parts and points are determined on them. These points can be selected randomly or according to predetermined plans. By going to each point, the organisms or plants found there are counted. This data collection is done for a fixed period, such as 5-10 minutes. This method is particularly useful for counting and analyzing flora, fauna, or their characteristics. For example, to count birds in a forest area, the number of birds is counted by standing at different points in that specific area.

Fig 12.3 Point Count Method



Source: Google Image

Merits:

- Simple and time-saving: This method is easy and time-efficient for data collection and analysis as it involves visiting only a few specific points to collect the data.
- Renewal and uniformity: This method generally provides realistic and relevant data with minimal artificiality due to uniform standards at all locations.

Demerits:

- Threat of insufficient data: If the number of points selected is too small, it may lead to a lack of accurate representation of the entire area.
- Dependence on survey nature: If the nature of the survey is selected wrongly, then there are chances of getting wrong results.

Remote Sensing Mapping and Geographic Information Systems (GIS) method

Under biogeography, remote sensing and GIS (geographical information system) techniques are used for the collection and analysis of geographical data of species, which facilitates the study of large areas. Data related to biological species are collected through remote sensing and GIS through three main means. 1. Ground-based technology includes installing sensors on vehicles, other machines, towers, air balloons kites etc. 2. Aerial photographs - aeroplanes, helicopters, drones etc. 3. Satellite photographs - polar-orbiting satellites, geostationary satellites.

Ground Based Methods:

Ground-based platforms: These are used to collect data on various characteristics of biological species from the Earth's surface (land or ocean) by developing sensors for data collection near the ground. Ground-based platforms can be masts or towers of various heights and shapes such as vehicles, machines, towers, air balloons kites etc. with cameras and sensors installed on them to collect data.





Source: Google Image

Aerial Photography:

Aerial photography is an early form of remote sensing and is one of the most widespread and cost-effective techniques. Aerial photography is one of the most important techniques used in biospecies and ecological surveys. It is useful for both regional analysis and evaluation of a geographic area. It also provides a historical perspective as it is useful for technical studies to understand the changes in landscapes over time. Various platforms are used for aerial photography such as balloons, pigeons, skydiving, helicopters, fixed-wing aircraft, drones etc.

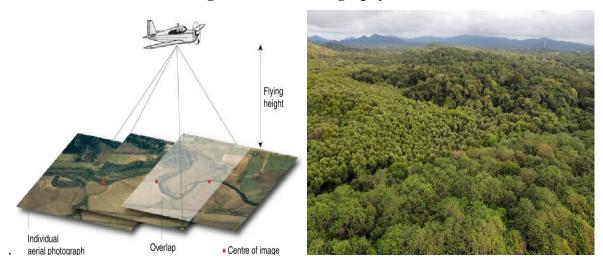


Fig 12.5 Aerial Photography

Source: Google Image

Satellite Imagery:

The use of satellite imagery under the field study method in biogeography is very important. Because with the help of this method, helps in assessing, monitoring and modelling the changes taking place in biodiversity on the surface of the Earth in terms of time. It is also helpful in improving the accuracy of ecological models for the management and planning of biological species.

Fig 12.6 Satellite Imagery:



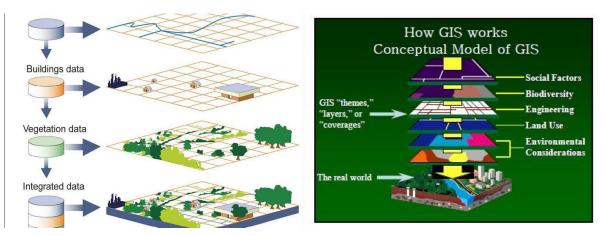
Source: Google Image

For example, satellite images are used to analyze land cover, vegetation type habitat change etc. of a particular place.

Geographic Information Systems (GIS):

GIS technology is an effective tool for managing, analyzing and visualizing biological species data within the field method in biogeography, In Biogeography, Geographic Information Systems (GIS) is a very important technology for collecting, analyzing, and displaying geographic data of biological species. In which geographic data of species can be displayed through maps, graphics, and other forms. Through GIS technology, the researcher identifies the pattern of various aspects of an ecosystem such as forests, grasslands, and wetlands. And tries to know how the distribution of a particular species depends on geographical features, climate, and land use. And tries to analyze the relationship between species and their environmental factors. This helps to understand how environmental factors such as temperature, rainfall, and soil quality affect the distribution of species. Also, GIS is used to create models for predicting the distribution of species. This prediction is made based on climate change, land use change, and other factors that can affect the distribution of species.

Fig 12.7 Geographic Information Systems



Source: Google Image

Merits:

- More data, less time: These techniques can monitor and map larger areas, which is not possible with other traditional methods. And the collection of data can be done efficiently in less time.
- Collection of complex and diverse data: This method also makes it possible to monitor difficult-to-reach areas such as inaccessible mountains, Arctic Antarctica etc. Also, there is the ability to collect various types of images and data simultaneously, such as satellite images, aerial photographs, etc., which depict various geographical conditions and ecosystems.

Tagging and Tracking method

The tagging and tracking method is an important process under the field study method in biogeography which is used to accurately collect and monitor various data (species mobility, species range, food pattern, social structure, migration pattern, population, and behaviour analysis) in the study of biological species. Under tagging, a living species (organism/plant) is given a unique identification (such as tag, chip, band, radio transmitter, or GPS device) so that it can be easily tracked. Under tracking, the movement and status of a living species (organism/plant) is continuously monitored.

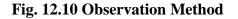
Fig 12.8 Tagging and Tracking Method

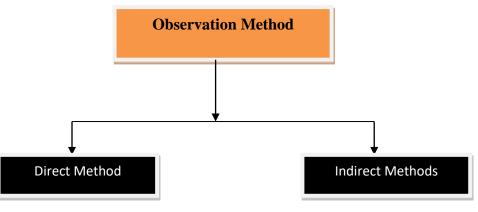


Source: Google Image

Observation Method:

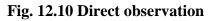
In Biogeography, the observation method is used as an important tool for study. This method, directly or indirectly is used to study species, ecosystems, and their distribution in the natural environment. This method is based on directly going to the field and observing the species and their environment. This gives real and reliable data. In the observation method, researchers go to natural habitats and document the structure and distribution of species, ecological relationships and ecosystems. This information helps to understand the geographical range of species and their distribution pattern. It is also helpful in understanding the changes occurring in species and ecosystems over time. This method helps evaluate the adaptation of species and their response to environmental changes.





Direct observation:

In the direct observation method, the researcher himself collects data by observing events, actions, or behaviours in real-time. In this, the observer is directly present in the study area.





Source: Google Image

In this, instead of directly observing any event, behaviour or changes related to biological species, information is collected for study based on effects, results or other indicative signs. This method is used when it is not possible to observe directly or a more informative view is to be obtained from direct observation. Such as footprints, nests and other signs

12.4 SUMMARY

Biogeography is a major branch of physical geography in which biological (organism/plant) species are studied in detail in the context of place and time. In this, the origin, evolution, diversity, distribution, density, migration, extinction and ecological relations of various organism species found in a geographical area are studied. Biogeography is a branch of physical geography, due to which its study is not possible at any one place or in a laboratory, so the surface of the earth is its study area. In biogeography, various techniques and methods are used to study species on the surface. In which field study methods are important.

Field methods in Biogeography refer to those techniques and processes that are used to study the distribution of organism species and their environmental factors. The purpose of these methods is to understand the processes of diversity, distribution, density, evolution and extinction of organisms. Some of the common field methods used in biogeography as Sampling and Field Surveys method (Transect method, Quadrat Method, Point count Method).

These field methods not only help researchers/scientists understand the relationship between the composition of different species and their environment, but also help in their conservation by observing and assessing the impacts of global climate change, land use change, and other environmental factors on biological species.

12.5 GLOSSARY

Adaptation: Adaptation is the change in structure, functioning, or behaviour of an organism or species in response to changing conditions of its environment.

Anthropogenic processes: Anthropogenic processes are human activities that have a particularly negative impact on the natural environment. Such as climate change, air pollution, water pollution, deforestation, etc.

Biological community: Biological community is an important part of an ecosystem, in which a group of different types of organisms live together in a particular place and interact with each other. These communities are made up of different types of biological species, such as animals, plants, bacteria, fungi etc.

Geographic Information Systems: Geographic Information Systems (GIS) is a technical and systematic system used to store, analyze, and manage geographic data. It is used in a variety of fields, such as environmental management, biodiversity conservation etc.

Geological Time: The division of the history of the earth into large periods, which include periods ranging from billions of years to thousands of years. Such as Eons, Eras, and Periods.

Habitat: The natural environment or living place of different organisms is called habitat. Like forest for elephant, desert for camel, and water for fish is their habitat.

Sampling: The process in which a small part of a larger group is taken as representative and the results are estimated for the entire group with the help of that smaller part.

12.6 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

1. Bio-geography is a major branch of?

- (a) Human geography
- (b) Physical geography
- (c) Cultural Geography
- (d) Economic geography

Answer: (b)

2. Which of the following is studied in biogeography?

- (a) Animal species
- (b) Plant species
- (c) Biological species
- (d) Birds species

Answer: (c)

3. Which of the following are not tools and techniques of field methods of biogeography?

- (a) Observation Method
- (b) Laboratory Method
- (c) Sampling methods
- (d) GIS and remote sensing Methods

Answer: (b)

4. Which of the following is not an anthropogenic process?

(a) Climate change

- (b) Air pollution
- (c) Volcanic Eruption
- (d) Deforestation

Answer: (c)

5. What is the full form of GIS?

- (a) Geographical impute system
- (b) Geographic Information Systems
- (c) Geographical Information site
- (d) Geographical identification system

Answer: (b)

6. Geological Time refers to.....?

- (a) Light year.
- (b) Age of earth
- (c) Eras
- (d) Periods

7. Which one of the following is not a Tool included in the tagging and tracking method?

- (a) Tag
- (b) Band
- (c) Questionnaire
- (d) Radio Transmitter

Answer: (b)

Answer: (c)

8. Which of the following is not an example of a natural habitat?

- (a) Forest
- (b) Lake
- (c) Aquarium
- (d) Desert

Answer: (c)

9. What type of data is collected with the help of GPS in the field study method in biogeography?

- (A) PH level of soil
- (B) Density of species
- (C) Geographic coordinates of locations of species
- (D) Tree growth rate

Answer: (C)

10. Which field method involves collecting data on the presence and density of species along a line drawn along the habitat?

- (A) Quadrat sampling
- (B) Transect sampling
- (C) Plot sampling
- (D) Capture-recapture method

Answer: (B)

12.7 REFERENCES

- https://balsamblog.blogspot.com/2012/11/so-what-does-gis-actually-mean-for-us.html.
- <u>https://balsamblog.blogspot.com/2012/11/so-what-does-gis-actually-mean-for-us.html</u>.
- <u>https://core.ac.uk/download/pdf/228981753.pdf#page=22</u>.
- <u>https://education.nationalgeographic.org/resource/field-work/</u>.
- <u>https://www.google.co.in/books/edition/Field_Methods_in_Remote_Sensing/cXWqk9F5_vl0C?hl=en&gbpv=1&dq=Field+methods+of+study&printsec=frontcover</u>.
- <u>https://education.nationalgeographic.org/resource/geographic-information-system-gis/</u>.
- <u>https://gsp.humboldt.edu/olm/Courses/GSP_216/lessons/air-photo.html</u>.
- <u>https://kolemannlutz.medium.com/how-satellite-imagery-is-revolutionizing-the-wa-da44bfb95d89</u>.
- <u>https://link.springer.com/chapter/10.1007/978-3-030-52171-4_6</u>.
- <u>https://marine.ucsc.edu/methods/biodiversity-methods.html</u>.
- <u>https://mrssmithsbiology.wordpress.com/s3-bge-superunit/subunit-a-biodiversity-and-sampling/1c-sampling-techniques/</u>.
- <u>https://techcrunch.com/2022/07/28/after-50-years-pioneering-satellite-imagery-nasas-landsat-is-ready-for-50-more/</u>.
- <u>https://veerwajekarascc.in/wp-content/uploads/2019/03/biogeography-a-brief-introduction.pdf</u>.
- https://www.eolss.net/sample-chapters/c01/e6-64-01-01.pdf.
- <u>https://www.math.montana.edu/grad_students/writing-projects/2019/Owusu2019.pdf</u>.
- https://www.pexels.com/photo/drone-photography-of-a-forest-15115202/.
- https://www.projectsof8051.com/gps-based-wildlife-animal-tracking-system/,
- <u>https://www.researchgate.net/figure/Adult-Cape-griffon-vulture-with-a-patagial-tag-on-the-right-wing-metal-ring-on-the-right_fig3_51557198</u>.
- <u>https://www.researchgate.net/figure/The-principles-of-aerial-photograph-acquisition-from-an-aircraft-to-allow-subsequent_fig9_301611257</u>.
- <u>https://www.uwyo.edu/dbmcd/popecol/feblects/linetransect/linetransect.html</u>.

12.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

LONG QUESTION

- 1. Explain the importance of field methods in biogeography and mention any one field method in detail.
- 2. Explain the importance of survey and sampling field methods in biogeography and how these methods help in collecting environmental data?

- 3. Explain with a diagram the use of remote sensing and GIS techniques in biogeography?
- 4. Describe the utility of the field observation method in biogeography.
- 5. Comparatively describe the data collection methods used for field method study in biogeography such as trapping-tagging, and observation methods and highlight their importance.

SHORT QUESTION

1. What is the purpose of field method study in biogeography?

2. Explain the purpose of using the quadrangular method in field study methods of biogeography?

- 3. What methods are used for field sampling in biogeography?
- 4. Which method of field study is used to estimate the population of species in biogeography?
- 5. What is the significance of using GPS technology in biogeography field methods?
- 6. How does sampling effort affect the reliability of biogeography data?

UNIT-13 INTEGRATING BIOGEOGRAPHY WITH OTHER DISCIPLINES (E.G., ECOLOGY, CLIMATOLOGY)

- **13.1 OBJECTIVES**
- **13.2 INTRODUCTION**
- 13.3 INTEGRATING BIOGEOGRAPHY WITH OTHER DISCIPLINES (E.G., ECOLOGY, CLIMATOLOGY)
 - **13.3.1 BIOGEOGRAPHY AND ECOLOGY**
 - 13.3.2 KEY CONCEPT IN INTEGRATING BIOGEOGRAPHY AND ECOLOGY
 - **13.3.4 BIOGEOGRAPHY AND CLIMATOLOGY**
 - 13.3.5 KEY CONCEPT IN INTEGRATING BIOGEOGRAPHY AND CLIMATOLOGY
- **13.4 SUMMARY**
- 13.5 GLOSSARY
- **13.6 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS**
- **13.7 REFERENCES**
- **13.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS**

13.1 OBJECTIVES

After studying this chapter you will be able to:

- Describe biogeography, ecology, and climatology and discuss the significance of each in figuring out where species and ecosystems are found geographically.
- Identify the connections between biogeography, ecology, and climatology domains by contrasting and comparing their contributions to ecosystems and biodiversity.
- Evaluate the impact of human activity and climate change on species ranges and ecosystem functioning.

13.2 INTRODUCTION

The historical and contemporary geographical distribution of plants, animals, and other species is known as biogeography. Observation of links between living things and natural environments helps to understand the complexity of natural phenomena, mainly the birth of biogeography. The fascination that eventually led to the development of the theory of evolution and the genesis of species was largely motivated by the biological diversity discovered by many explorers and naturalists, including Charles Darwin, Louis Agassiz, and Alexander von Humboldt. The idea of adaptability is adequately explained by natural selection, which occurs in each organism's environment.

Biogeography, ecology, and climatology are interconnected fields that collectively help us understand the distribution of life on Earth. Understanding species distributions and ecosystem dynamics is improved by combining biogeography with other fields like ecology and climatology. While ecology investigates the interactions between living things and their surroundings, climatology looks at how temperature affects these interactions, and biogeography concentrates on the spatial patterns of species and ecosystems throughout the planet. By integrating these domains, researchers can investigate how ecological interactions, climatic fluctuations, and environmental factors influence biodiversity. This interdisciplinary approach allows us to understand the natural world and its complex processes more fully, making it essential for addressing global challenges such as habitat loss, and species conservation, and predicting the effects of climate change on ecosystems.

13.3 INTEGRATING BIOGEOGRAPHY WITH OTHER DISCIPLINES (E.G., ECOLOGY, CLIMATOLOGY)

13.3.1 BIOGEOGRAPHY AND ECOLOGY

The fields of biogeography and ecology are closely related because ecological variables impact species distribution (biogeography), and species distribution shapes ecological processes. Patterns in the distribution of life on Earth, the operation of ecosystems, and the effects of human activity on the natural environment can all be explained by an understanding of the linkages between these two fields.

1. SPECIES DISTRIBUTION AND ECOLOGICAL NICHES

In both disciplines, the idea of ecological niches is essential. A species' function or "job" within an ecosystem, encompassing its habitat, food supplies, and interactions with other species, is an ecological niche. While ecology looks at how species interact within their niches, biogeography helps explain how species are spread throughout different regions. Polar bears, for instance, are found in Arctic locations (biogeography), and their ecological niche entails surviving in frigid climates and hunting seals (ecology).

2. BIODIVERSITY PATTERNS AND ECOLOGICAL PROCESSES

Understanding biogeography enables us to comprehend biodiversity trends, such as the reasons behind the higher species diversity in tropical regions relative to temperate ones. The movement of energy, competition, and predation are examples of ecological processes that support this diversity. Because their climates are stable and permit intricate interactions between species, tropical rainforests, for example, are home to a wide variety of species and an extremely diversified ecosystem. One important idea that illustrates the connection between ecology and biogeography is island biogeography. Islands serve as excellent natural laboratories for researching the adaption, extinction, and colonization of species.

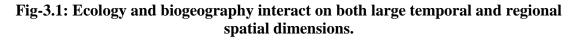
The species that flourish on an island are mostly determined by ecological factors like competition and predation. By connecting geographic isolation with ecological dynamics, Robert MacArthur and E.O. Wilson's Theory of Island Biogeography explains how an island's size and distance from the mainland affect species richness.

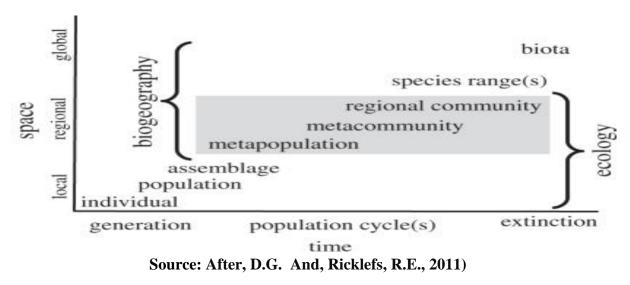
3. ECOSYSTEM FUNCTIONING WITH GEOGRAPHICAL CONTEXT

The biological, chemical, and physical activities that take place within an ecosystem to support life and maintain the resilience and health of the system are referred to as ecosystem functioning. Numerous elements, including climate, landforms, soil types, and human activity, all have an impact on how ecosystems function geographically and how living things interact with their surroundings. The biological, chemical, and physical activities that take place within an ecosystem to support life and maintain the resilience and health of the system

DIFFERENCES BETWEEN ECOLOGY AND BIOGEOGRAPHY

The descriptors of each discipline are recognized as stereotypical classifications with several deviations. Ecosystem ecology and global ecology are set aside because they operate at a distinct hierarchical level, focused more on biogeochemistry and energy (such as carbon cycles) than on organisms and populations as such. Ecology here refers to the contemporary ecology of organisms, populations, and communities.





Attribute	Biogeography	Ecology
spatial scales	global to regional	regional to local
temporal scales	millions to thousands of years	generation times to population cycles
fundamental units of study	clades, species, ranges, distributions	individuals, populations, communities
Fundamental processes of interest	speciation, extinction, range expansion or contraction	abiotic and biotic interactions that affect density or distribution
adjectives describing fundamental methods	descriptive, correlative, phylogenetic	experimental, correlative, replicated
example questions	What geological events best explain clade distributions? Why are species distributed as they are? Where has speciation or extinction occurred, and when?	Why do populations increase or decrease? How do species interact, and does that change with environmental context? What factors best correlate with species diversity?

Table-3.1: Difference between Biogeography and Ecology

Source: After: Jenkins, D.G. And, Ricklefs, R.E., 2011

13.3.2 KEY CONCEPTS IN INTEGRATING BIOGEOGRAPHY AND ECOLOGY

Several fundamental ideas connect the domains of ecology and biogeography, offering important new perspectives on the distribution and operation of life on Earth.

1. Ecotones and Biomes

Ecotons are transitional areas between two different ecosystems, such as the border between the forest and the meadows. These areas are rich in biological diversity and are influenced by ecological processes (such as competition) and geographic factors (such as climate). Biogeography helps us to understand where ecotone occurs, while ecology explains the dynamics of species interactions. Deserts, tundra and forests are examples of biomes that are large areas with comparable climatic conditions, vegetation and wildlife.

Environmentalists examine how ecosystems work within each biography, while the bio-geographer classifies the biomes of biomes. Because of its enormous biodiversity, for example, ecologists study the competition between species in the tropical rainforest bio for resources.

2. Endemism and Habitat Fragmentation

Endemic species are species that are found in a specific geographic area and nowhere else. Biogeography helps explain the evolutionary and geographic isolation that leads to endemism, while ecology examines how these species interact within their environments. For example, the lemurs of Madagascar are endemic due to the island's long-term isolation, and their ecological roles vary based on their niche within the island's ecosystems.

Habitat fragmentation occurs when large ecosystems are broken up into smaller, isolated patches due to human activities like deforestation. This affects both the geographic distribution of species (biogeography) and the functioning of ecosystems (ecology). Fragmentation reduces biodiversity by isolating species populations, which limits gene flow and increases the risk of extinction. Ecologists study how species adapt to these fragmented habitats and how ecosystems can be restored.

> HUMAN IMPACT ON BIOGEOGRAPHY AND ECOLOGY

Human activities, such as deforestation, urbanization, and climate change, have profoundly altered species distribution and ecosystem dynamics. By understanding the integration of biogeography and ecology, we can better predict and mitigate the impact of human-induced changes.

For example, climate change is shifting the geographic range of species as temperatures rise and ecosystems are altered. Species that cannot adapt to new environmental conditions are at risk of extinction. Ecologists study how species adapt to these changes, while biogeographers map the shifting distributions of species and ecosystems.

Additionally, conservation biogeography is an emerging field that applies the principles of biogeography to biodiversity conservation, emphasizing the need to conserve not only species but also the ecosystems and geographic areas that support them. Ecological restoration, which involves rebuilding damaged ecosystems, relies on biogeographic knowledge to ensure that species are reintroduced into areas where they can thrive.

13.3.3 BIOGEOGRAPHY AND CLIMATOLOGY

Biogeography and climatology help us to better understand how climate patterns affect life on Earth and how the distribution of species and ecosystems responds to climatic conditions. This synergy is necessary to solve many environmental and ecological problems. One of the important factors that affect the distribution of species and ecosystems is the climate.

By combining biogeography and climate science, you can better understand how climate change affects biodiversity and how the climate affects the spatial model of life on the Earth.

1. CLIMATE AS A DETERMINANT OF SPECIES DISTRIBUTION

The distribution of species and ecosystems is closely linked to climate as it directly affects the availability of resources such as water, temperature, and sunlight. For example, tropical forests are found in areas with high heat and rainfall, while deserts are found in areas with low rainfall and extreme temperatures. Biogeography helps map the distribution of species, and climatology helps understand the climate patterns that determine where these species can survive.

Example: The Tundra Biome In regions with extremely cold climates, such as the Arctic tundra, only species adapted to freezing temperatures and short growing seasons can survive. This climatic limitation on the distribution of species is a key concept in biogeography, as the tundra biome supports only specific plant and animal species, such as mosses, lichens, and Arctic foxes that are adapted to its harsh climate.

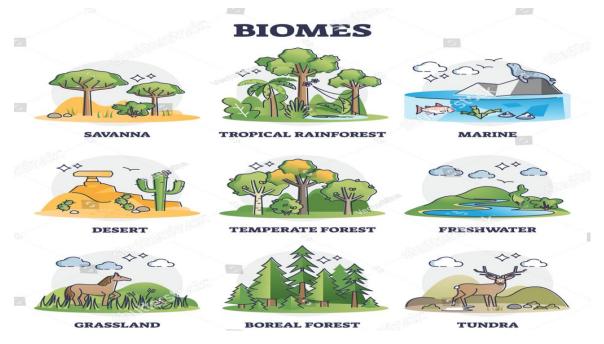
2. BIOMES AND CLIMATE ZONES

Biomes are large-scale ecosystems defined by particular climate conditions and the kinds of animals that inhabit them. This idea is one of the most significant integrations of biogeography and climatology. Biogeography describes how species are distributed within these biomes, while climatology offers the framework for comprehending the temperature, precipitation, and other climatic elements that characterize each biome.

Major Biomes:

- **Tropical Rainforests:** Found near the equator, where warm temperatures and high levels of rainfall create ideal conditions for diverse plant and animal life.
- Savannas and Grasslands: Located in regions with seasonal rainfall, where grasses dominate and support herbivores like zebras and antelope.

- **Deserts:** Occur in regions with very low rainfall and high temperatures, supporting species like cacti and specialized animals such as camels.
- **Temperate Forests:** Found in regions with moderate temperatures and precipitation, supporting deciduous and coniferous trees.
- **Polar and Tundra Regions:** Characterized by cold temperatures, short growing seasons, and limited biodiversity.



Source: shutterstock.com/image-vector/biomes

Climatology helps classify these regions based on temperature and precipitation patterns, while biogeography examines the specific species that have adapted to these conditions.

3. CLIMATE CHANGE AND SPECIES MIGRATION

The distribution of species has changed over time due in large part to the climate. Species have migrated, adapted, or gone extinct as a result of climate change events like warming and ice ages. How species distributions have changed in response to these changes can be explained by combining historical biogeography and palaeoclimatology. For instance, many species moved southward to avoid the rising glaciers during the previous Ice Age. Species returned to newly accessible habitats as the glaciers melted. In the present day, global climate change is once again altering the distribution of species. As temperatures rise and weather patterns change, species are migrating toward the poles or higher elevations in search of suitable habitats. This shift is especially evident in marine ecosystems, where warming oceans are causing species such as fish and corals to move to cooler waters.

Example: Climate change and coral reefs Changes in sea temperatures have a significant impact on coral reefs. Widespread bleaching, in which corals expel the algae that live in their tissues and cause the corals to die, is occurring on coral reefs as a result of ocean warming caused by climate change. Due to this biogeographic shift, a direct consequence of climate change, the survival of entire ecosystems that depend on coral reefs is threatened.

13.3.4 KEY CONCEPTS IN INTEGRATING BIOGEOGRAPHY AND CLIMATOLOGY

Some important concepts emphasize the importance of integration of biological geography and climate studies to understand the environment and environmental processes.

1. Species' Climatic Niches

The range of climatic conditions that a species can tolerate, reproduce, and maintain populations is called the climatic niche of that species. While climatologists provide information about temperature, precipitation, and other climatic factors that characterize these niches, biogeographers study the distribution of species in their climatic niches. To predict how organisms will respond to future climate change, we need to understand their climatic niche.

Example: Alpine species Alpine species, such as ibex and some plant species, have a narrow climatic niche that requires low temperatures and high altitude. As global temperatures rise, these species may be forced to migrate to higher altitudes where suitable climatic conditions still exist or face extinction in the absence of such habitats.

2. Climatic Barriers to Species Dispersal

Climatic barriers play a significant role in shaping species distributions. Extreme climates, such as deserts or high-altitude environments, often act as barriers that prevent

species from dispersing to new areas. Integrating biogeography and climatology allows us to understand how these barriers limit species migration and maintain distinct biogeographical regions.

Example: As a climate barrier, the Sahara Desert stops species from migrating from the Mediterranean region to the African tropics. Different faunal and floral zones have developed on either side of the desert as a result of the extreme conditions that make it practically difficult for many species to exist there.

3. Climate Models and Predicting Future Distributions

Climate modelling advances enable scientists to forecast potential changes in species distributions in response to future climate scenarios. To predict the effects of climate change on biodiversity, scientists combine climatological models of future climatic trends with biogeographical data on species' existing distributions and ecological needs. Developing solutions for biodiversity management and conservation in the context of climate change requires this combination.

> HUMAN IMPACT ON CLIMATE AND SPECIES DISTRIBUTION

Human activities such as deforestation, urbanization, and greenhouse gas emissions are significantly altering climate patterns and species distributions.

By integrating biogeography and climatology, we can better understand how anthropogenic climate change affects ecosystems and biodiversity.

- Shifts in Climate Zones: Rising temperatures are causing shifts in climate zones, pushing species toward the poles or higher elevations.
- Habitat Loss and Fragmentation: Human activities are reducing the availability of suitable habitats for species, compounding the effects of climate change.
- Increased Frequency of Extreme Weather Conditions: Climate change leads to more frequent and intense weather events, such as hurricanes, floods, and droughts, which can have devastating effects on ecosystems and species distributions.

13.4 SUMMARY

A crucial field that describes how species adapt and distribute themselves in response to climatic and ecological interactions is biogeography. Understanding the intricate relationships between species, ecosystems, and climate is made easier by combining biogeography with ecology and climatology. More precise forecasts of species distributions, reactions to environmental changes, and the effects of climate change on biodiversity are made possible by this interdisciplinary approach. Scientists and environmentalists can improve ecosystem management, create sustainable conservation plans, and lessen the effects of climate change by integrating knowledge from these domains.

Ultimately, this integration fosters a more comprehensive understanding of nature, enabling more effective global environmental challenges to be addressed. Understanding the historical and current geographic factors influencing species dispersal enhances our capacity to protect ecosystems and species.

13.5 GLOSSARY

Biogeography: The study of the geographical distribution of species and ecosystems across the Earth.

Ecology: The branch of biology that deals with the interactions between organisms and their environment.

Climatology: The study of climate and its variations over time.

Natural Selection: The process by which organisms better adapted to their environment tend to survive and produce more offspring.

Ecological Niche: The role of a species within an ecosystem, including its habitat, food sources, and interactions.

Biodiversity: The variety of life in a particular habitat or ecosystem.

Endemism: The state of a species being unique to a defined geographic location.

Habitat Fragmentation: The process by which large ecosystems are broken into smaller, isolated patches.

Ecotone: A transition area between two different ecosystems.

Biome: A large-scale ecosystem characterized by distinct climate, vegetation, and animal life.

Island Biogeography: A field studying the factors that affect the species diversity and composition of isolated natural communities.

Conservation Biogeography: The application of biogeographical principles to biodiversity conservation.

Climatic Niche: The range of climatic conditions in which a species can survive and thrive.

Paleoclimatology: The study of past climates and their impact on the distribution of species.

Species Migration: The movement of species in response to changing environmental conditions, often driven by climate change.

13.6 ANSWER TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

- **1.** The theory of evolution and species adaptation stems from biogeographical studies by pioneers like Humboldt and Darwin.
- 2. Interdisciplinary studies between biogeography, ecology, and climatology offer insights into species' responses to environmental changes and climate impacts.
- **3.** Ecological niches and species distribution are key concepts linking biogeography and ecology.
- **4.** Human-induced climate change significantly alters species distributions, underscoring the need for integrated biogeography and climatology studies.

5. Ecological restoration and conservation biogeography focus on preserving species and ecosystems amidst changing environments.

13.7 REFERENCE

- Balvanera, Patricia, Gretchen C. Daily, Paul R. Ehrlich, Taylor H. Ricketts, Sallie-Anne Bailey, Salit Kark, Claire Kremen, and Henrique Pereira, (2001). "Conserving Biodiversity and Ecosystem Services", Science, 291(5511): 2047. doi:10.1126/science.291.5511.2047 8.
- Binder, Seth and Stephen Polasky, (2013) "Biodiversity, Human WellBeing, and Markets", in Levin 2013, 1: 435–439. doi:10.1016/B978-0-12- 384719-5.00360-9 9.
- C. Barry Cox, Peter D. Moore. (2005). Biogeography: An Ecological and Evolutionary Approach. Blackwell Publishing.
- Ceballos, G. et al. (2015). "Accelerated modern human-induced species losses: Entering the sixth mass extinction", Science Advances, <u>http://dx.doi.org/10.1126/sciadv.1400253</u>.
- Darwin, C. (1859). On the Origin of Species using Natural Selection. John Murray.
- Jain, R. (2017). Environment Geography. Kalyani Publishers, New Delhi.
- Jenkins, D. G., Ricklefs, R. E. (2011). Biogeography and ecology: two views of one world. Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci. Aug 27;366 (1576):2331-5. doi: 10.1098/rstb.2011.0064. PMID: 21768149; PMCID: PMC3130434.
- Lipton, D. et al. (2018). "Ecosystems, Ecosystem Services, and Biodiversity", in Reidmiller, D. et al. (eds.), Impacts, Risks, and Adaptation in the United States: Fourth National Climate Assessment, Volume II, U.S. Global Change Research Program, Washington D.C.
- Lomolino, M. V., Riddle, B. R., & Brown, J. H. (2005). Biogeography (3rd ed.). Sinauer Associates.
- MacArthur, R. H., & Wilson, E. O. (1967). The Theory of Island Biogeography. Princeton University Press.

- Odum, E. P. (1971). Fundamentals of Ecology. Third Edition. Saunders College Publishing, Philadelphia, USA.
- Pimm, S. L. (1982). Food Webs. Chapman and Hall, London.
- Sati, V. P. (2012). An Introduction to Environment, Rawat Publications, Jaipur.
- Saxena, H. M. (2013). Environmental Geography. Rawat Publications, New Delhi.
- Singh J. S., Singh S.P., and Gupta S.R. (2015). Ecology, Environmental Science and Conservation. S. Chand, New Delhi.
- Singh, Savindra (1991). Environmental Geography, Prayag Pustak Sadan, Prayagraj.

13.8 TERMINAL QUESTIONS

Long Questions

- **1.** Explain the interconnections between biogeography, ecology, and climatology, and key concepts in integrating Biogeography and ecology?
- 2. Define ecology and explain what the difference between ecology and Biogeography is?
- **3.** Explain Climatology and key concepts in integrating Biogeography and Climatology?

Short Questions

- **1.** How does ecology relate to biogeography?
- **2.** What is an ecological niche?
- 3. Why are tropical rainforests rich in biodiversity?
- 4. What is the significance of endemic species?
- 5. How does climate change affect species migration?
- **6.** What role does climatology play in biogeography?
- 7. What are biomes?

Multiple Choice Questions

- 1. Which explorer's work contributed to the theory of evolution?
 - A. Alexander von Humboldt
 - **B.** Marie Curie
 - C. Albert Einstein
 - **D.** Galileo Galilei
- **2.** What is an ecological niche?
 - A. A food source in an ecosystem
 - **B.** The role of a species within an ecosystem
 - **C.** A type of climate
 - **D.** A species found in one location
- 3. The study of climate and its changes is known as:
 - **A.** Ecology
 - **B.** Meteorology
 - C. Climatology
 - **D.** Geology
- 4. Which factor influences species distribution according to climatology?
 - **A.** Population size
 - **B.** Climate patterns
 - C. Predation rates
 - **D.** Food availability
- **5.** Coral reef bleaching is mainly caused by:
 - A. Increased predation
 - **B.** Cold temperatures
 - C. Warming ocean temperatures
 - **D.** Deforestation

- 6. Which scientist is associated with natural selection?
 - A. Isaac Newton
 - **B.** Charles Darwin
 - **C.** Louis Agassiz
 - D. Nikola Tesla
- 7. The polar bear's habitat is:
 - A. Tropical forest
 - **B.** Arctic regions
 - C. Deserts
 - **D.** Temperate forests
- **8.** The term "biodiversity" refers to:
 - A. The number of species in an ecosystem
 - **B.** The weather patterns in a region
 - **C.** The size of the ecosystem
 - **D.** The total population of an ecosystem
- 9. Which of the following best describes biomes?
 - A. Small isolated regions
 - **B.** Large ecosystems with distinct climates
 - **C.** Urban ecosystems
 - D. Water-based ecosystems only
- **10.** Climate change is causing species to:
 - A. Stay in their current habitats
 - **B.** Evolve into new species
 - **C.** None of the above
 - **D.** Migrate toward the poles or higher elevations

Answer. 1. A, 2.B, 3.C, 4.B, 5.C, 6.B, 7.B, 8.A, 9.B, 10.D





UTTARAKHAND OPEN UNIVERSITY

Teenpani Bypass Road, Behind Transport Nagar, Haldwani- 263139, Nainital (Uttarakhand) Phone: 05946-261122, 261123; Fax No. 05946-264232 Website: www.uou.ac.in; e-mail: info@uou.ac.in Toll Free No.: 1800 180 4025